

Development of Terminologies in the Library Catalogue Codes since 1841: An Assessment Study

**Thesis Submitted for the Degree of
Doctor of Philosophy (Arts)
at
Jadavpur University**

**By
Anupam Ghosh**

**Supervisor
Dr. Goutam Maity
Professor
Department of Library and Information Science
Jadavpur University
West Bengal, India**

**Department of Library and Information Science
Jadavpur University
Kolkata-700032
West Bengal, India
2022**

Dedicated

To my beloved parents

Mr. Parimal Ghosh

&

Mrs. Archana Ghosh

Certificate

Certified that the thesis entitled “Development of Terminologies in the Library Catalogue Codes since 1841: An Assessment Study” submitted by me for the award of the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Arts at Jadavpur University is based upon my work carried out under the Supervision of Prof. Goutam Maity, Department of Library and Information Science, Jadavpur University, West Bengal. And neither this thesis nor any part of it has been submitted before for any degree or diploma anywhere/ elsewhere.

Countersigned by Supervisor

Dated:

Candidate

Dated:

Preface

Cataloguing is one of the pillar of library and information science. In spite of the advancement of information and communication technology the importance of cataloguing as a tool for information retrieval is still recognized. Catalogue codes are the set of rules to make descriptive cataloguing.

As cataloguing as well as library and information science is considered as “Science” so terminologies are essential components for cataloguing in practice. This fact is reflected as almost all the catalogue codes have a separate chapter from specialized terminologies.

Terminology has two meanings-in popular sense it a set of technical terms along with their definitions limited to a particular subject domain. In another sense it is the study of terms and their definitions historically, linguistically, semantically and technically. Different experts of cataloguing mentioned the importance of terminological research in the subject to know the practice pattern of the subject in different era and also the accuracy of the term and their definition to express a particular concept in a particular language.

In this research project 13 popular catalogue codes of different period are chosen for studying their terminology. The assessment study of the terminologies of these codes have been made in historical perspectives of occurrence of different terms in different times. The evolution of the definitions were also studied to know the growth pattern of the concepts in different period of time. An evaluation of terms and their definitions have been made according to some established measurement criteria based on some canons and standards as proposed by experts and International organization like ISO.

This research work may be helpful to the users to know the occurrence pattern of cataloguing terminologies, evolution of definitions of the term in different era. At the same time it may guide further researchers to evaluate the terms and their definitions of a subject domain based on some established standards. Ranganathn once said that terminologies are not static but should be changed in the hands of a few subject experts in a scientific way. This research work is a step forward to show the changes and examine the changes.

(Anupam Ghosh)

Date:

Acknowledgement

At the beginning, I like to express my deep sense of gratitude to my respected teacher and supervisor, Prof. Goutam Maity of Department of Library and Information Science, Jadavpur University, West Bengal, India for his careful guidance in every step of this research work. His formidable intellect has made me enriched and enlightened in pursuance of this investigation. I am proud to have him as my research supervisor. I am conveying my heartiest gratitude to my teacher late Bijoypada Mukhopadhyay who always encouraged and enriched me by his affection and intellect. As a direct student and admirer of Ranganathan, BPM Sir always motivated me to take over the project on cataloguing by his attractive class lectures during BLIS and MLIS courses. I am also grateful to Professor Subal Chandra Biswas, Department of Library and Information Science, University of Burdwan and Professor Chaitali Dutta, Department of Library and Information Science, Jadavpur University for their valuable suggestions in any situation.

I also convey my heartiest gratitude to Dr. Asitabha Das, former Librarian, University of Kalyani. He not only acted as a “teacher” but also boosted up me in every pressure situation.

Besides my teachers, I remain indebted to some other persons also. I never forget the role of Dr. Subarna Bandyopadhyay, my colleague at the University of Burdwan for her valuable tips at various stages of the project by virtue of her experiences during her own Ph.D. My other former colleagues at the University of Burdwan also have shown their cooperative attitudes at the time of collection of data. I am also grateful to Dr. Ranadip Chandra, Librarian, Banarhat Government College for his valuable cooperation for typing and formatting the text part.

I am also fortunate enough to get cooperation of many LIS students. Surajit Dey, NSOU; Ranjita Naskar and Anindita Adhikary, Jadavpur University; Atreyee Ghosh, University of Calcutta have assisted me to their level best in collecting and analyzing data at various stages by adjusting their busy schedules. The role of another

Student Priyanko Sen, now the Librarian of Sitalkuchi College is also unforgettable. He assisted me in collecting data, locating relevant information at the time of literature review, analyzing data, typing the thesis and many others in preparation of this thesis. I am also indebted to all my teachers of the Department of Library and Information Science, Jadavpur University who shared their knowledge at the time of my studentship at the department and also gave me the opportunity to register as a student at the Ph.D. level.

Last but not the least I am thankful to the Faculty of Arts, Jadavpur University and the Ph.D. cell, Jadavpur University for their cooperation throughout the project.

(Anupam Ghosh)

Date:

Contents

Chapters	Page No.
<i>Preface</i>	<i>iv</i>
<i>Acknowledgement</i>	<i>vi</i>
<i>List of Tables</i>	<i>xiii</i>
<i>List of Abbreviations</i>	<i>xvii</i>
<i>Glossary</i>	<i>xviii</i>
<i>Abstract</i>	<i>xxi</i>
Chapter 1: Introduction	1
1.1 Selection of the Research Problem	1
1.2 Statement of the Problem and Research Questions	3
1.3 Objectives of the Study	4
1.4 Methodology	4
1.5 Significance of the Study	10
1.6 Style of Referencing	11
1.7 Chapters	11
Chapter 2: Literature Review	13
2.1 Observations	13
2.1.1 Meaning of Cataloguing	14
2.1.2 Necessity of Cataloguing in Digital Era	14
2.1.3 Catalogue and Cataloguing Research: Development and Changes	15
2.1.4 Terminology: Meaning and Scope	17
2.1.5 Terminology as a Part of Catalogue Codes	17
2.1.6 History of Catalogue Codes	18
2.1.7 Cataloguing Terminology Research: Scope Set by the	32

Pioneers	
2.2 Conclusion	33
References	34
Chapter 3: Terminology: Concept, Component and Evaluation with Special Reference to the Field of Library Cataloguing	37
3.1 Importance of Terminological Studies in Cataloguing	38
3.2 Scope	39
3.3 Standard Definition of Terminology	40
3.4 Component of Terminology	40
3.5 Concept and Concept Relationship	41
3.6 Steps of Building Terminology	42
3.7 Terms Used in a Terminology	42
3.8 Terminologization	42
3.9 Terminology vs. Lexicography	45
3.10 Evaluation of Terminology	46
3.11 Defining the Concept	48
3.12 Terminology in Library Cataloguing	50
3.13 Ranganathan's Canons of Terminology	52
3.14 Scheele's Effort	52
3.15 Comparative study of the Canons of Ranganathan, Scheele and ISO704:2000	53
3.16 Term Evaluation Scale	54
3.17 Application of the Term Evaluation Scale	54
3.18 Conclusion	57
References	58
Chapter 4: Catalogue Codes and Their Terminologies	60
4.1 Author Related Terms	61
4.2 Catalogue Related Terms	66
4.3 Document Related Terms	69

4.4 Edition Related Terms	80
4.5 Entry Related Terms	82
4.6 Heading Related Terms	86
4.7 Preliminary Page Related Term	87
4.8 Sections of Entry Related Term	88
4.9 Title Related Terms	90
4.10 Unused Terms	94
4.11 Homonyms	101
4.12 Conclusion	104
 Chapter 5: Evolution of Cataloguing Concepts: Changes in the Definitions of Cataloguing Terms	 108
5.1 Added Entry	109
5.2 Added Title Page	111
5.3 Alternative Title	113
5.4 Atlas	114
5.5 Author	116
5.6 Binder's Title	118
5.7 Catalogue	120
5.8 Collection	122
5.9 Compiler	124
5.10 Corporate Body	126
5.11 Edition	128
5.12 Editor	130
5.13 Entry	133
5.14 Entry Word	135
5.15 Half Title	136
5.16 Heading	138
5.17 Joint Author	140
5.18 Main Entry	142
5.19 Monograph	144

5.20 Periodical	146
5.21 Reference	148
5.22 Serial	149
5.23 Series	152
5.24 Title	156
5.25 Title Page	159
5.26 Translator	161
5.27 Volume	162
5.28 Conclusion	167
 Chapter 6: Evaluation of Cataloguing Terminologies	 168
6.1 Term – Added Entry	169
6.2 Term – Added Title Page	172
6.3 Term – Alternative Title	175
6.4 Term Atlas	177
6.5 Term -Author	179
6.6 Binder's Title	184
6.7 Term – Catalogue	186
6.8 Term – Collection	188
6.9 Term – Compiler	191
6.10 Term Corporate Body	194
6.11 Term Edition	197
6.12 Editor	199
6.13 Term Entry	203
6.14 Term- Entry Word	206
6.15 Term – Half Title	208
6.16 Term Heading	210
6.17 Term – Joint Author	213
6.18 Term – Main Entry	216
6.19 Term – Monograph	220
6.20 Term – Periodical	222

6.21 Term – Reference	226
6.22 Term – Serial	228
6.23 Term – Series	232
6.24 Term – Title	236
6.25 Term – Title Page	240
6.26 Term – Translator	243
6.27 Term – Volume	245
6.28 Conclusion	250
 Chapter 7: Summary of Findings and Conclusion	 252
 Bibliography	 263
 Appendices	
Appendix – 1: Data Collection Sheet	267
Appendix – 1A: Rank List of Used Terms	268
Appendix – 2: Alphabetical List of Used Terms	287
Appendix – 3: Alphabetical List of Category-wise Used Terms	304
Appendix – 4: Rank List of Unused Terms	315
Appendix – 4A: Occurrence Pattern of Terms	318
Appendix – 5: Negative Characteristics found in Terms and Definitions	333
Appendix – 6: Graphical Presentation of Terms in Different Categories	336
Appendix – 7: Term-wise Highest Percentage Score for Designations and Definitions	338

List of Tables

Chapter 3

Table 3.1: Comparison between terminology and lexicography

Table 3.2: Comparison of the Canons of Ranganathan, Scheele and ISO 704:2000

Table 3.3: Evaluation of the term Catalogue

Table 3.4: Definition evaluation of the term Catalogue in AACR2R 2002

Table 3.5: Definition evaluation of the term 'Catalogue' in CCC 5 1965

Chapter 4

Table 4.1: Occurrences of author related terms and their categorizations

Table 4.2: Occurrences of Catalogue related terms and their categorisations

Table-4.3: Occurrences of document related terms: 3D artefacts

Table 4.4: Occurrences of document related terms: Cartographic materials

Table 4.5: Occurrences of Document related terms: Continuing resources

Table 4.6: Occurrences of Document related terms: Electronic resources

Table 4.7: Occurrences of Document related terms: Generic terms

Table-4.8: Occurrences of Document related terms: Graphic materials

Table 4.9: Occurrences of document related terms: Microforms

Table 4.10: Occurrences of document related terms: Motion picture

Table 4.11: Occurrences of document related terms: Multiple formats

Table 4.12: Occurrences of Document related terms: Musical

Table 4.13: Occurrences of Document related terms: Sound recordings and Braille

Table 4.14: Occurrences of Document related terms: Textual

Table 4.15: Occurrences of edition related terms and their categorisations

Table 4.16: Occurrences of entry related terms and their categorisations

Table 4.17: Occurrences of heading related terms and their categorizations

Table 4.18: Occurrences of preliminary pages (PP) related terms and their

categorizations

Table 4.19: Occurrences of sections of entry related terms and their categorizations

Table 4.20: Occurrences of title related terms and their categorizations

Table 4.21: List of unused terms and their occurrences

Table 4.22: Homonyms and their occurrences

Table 4.23 List of core terms with their ranking score

Chapter 5

Table 5.1: Evolution of Definitions of Added Entry

Table 5.2: Evolution of Definitions of Added title page

Table 5.3: Evolution of Definitions of Alternative title

Table 5.4: Evolution of definitions of Atlas

Table 5.5: Evolution of definitions of Author

Table 5.6: Evolution of definitions of Binder's title

Table 5.7: Evolution of definitions of Catalogue

Table 5.8: Evolution of definitions of Collection

Table 5.9: Evolution of definitions of Compiler

Table 5.10: Evolution of definitions of Corporate body

Table 5.11: Evolution of definitions of Edition

Table 5.12: Evolution of definitions of Editor

Table 5.13: Evolution of definitions of Entry

Table 5.14: Evolution of definitions of Entry word

Table 5.15: Evolution of definitions of Half title

Table 5.16: Evolution of definitions of Heading

Table 5.17: Evolution of definitions of Joint author

Table 5.18: Evolution of definitions of Main entry

Table 5.19: Evolution of definitions of Monograph

Table 5.20: Evolution of definitions of Periodical

Table 5.21: Evolution of definitions of Reference

Table 5.22: Evolution of definitions of Serial

Table 5.23: Evolution of definitions of Series

Table 5.24: Evolution of Definitions of Title

Table 5.25: Evolution of definitions of Title Page

Table 5.26: Evolution of definitions of Translator

Table 5.27: Evolution of definitions of Volume

Chapter 6

Table 6.1A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Added Entry’

Table 6.1B: Evaluation of the Definition of the Term ‘Added Entry’

Table 6.2A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Added Title Page’

Table 6.2B: Evaluation of the Definition of the Term ‘Added Title Page’

Table 6.3A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Alternative Title’

Table 6.3B: Evaluation of the Definitions of the Term ‘Alternative Title’

Table 6.4A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Atlas’

Table 6.4B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Atlas’

Table 6.5A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Author’

Table 6.5B: Evaluation of the Definitions of the Term ‘Author’

Table 6.6A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Binder's Title’

Table 6.6B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Binder’s Title’

Table 6.7A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Catalogue’

Table 6.7B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Catalogue’

Table 6.8A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Collection’

Table 6.8B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Collection’

Table 6.9A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Compiler’

Table 6.9B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Compiler’

Table 6.10A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Corporate body’

Table 6.10B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Corporate body’

Table 6.11A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Edition’

Table 6.11B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Edition’

Table 6.12A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Editor’

Table 6.12B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Editor’

Table 6.13A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Entry’

Table 6.13B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Entry’

Table 6.14A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Entry word’

Table 6.14B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Entry word’

Table 6.15A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Half Title’

Table 6.15B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Half Title’

Table 6.16A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Heading’

Table 6.16B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Heading’

Table 6.17A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Joint Author’

Table 6.17B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Joint author’

Table 6.18A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Main entry’

Table 6.18B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Main Entry’

Table 6.19A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Monograph’

Table 6.19B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Monograph’

Table 6.20A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Periodical’

Table 6.20B: Evaluation of the Definitions of the Term ‘Periodical’

Table 6.21A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Reference’

Table 6.21B: Evaluation of the Definitions of the Term ‘Reference’

Table 6.22A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Serial’

Table 6.22B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Serial’

Table 6.23A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Series’

Table 6.23B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Series’

Table 6.24A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Title’

Table 6.24B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Title’

Table 6.25A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Title Page’

Table 6.25B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Title page’

Table 6.26A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Translator’

Table 6.26B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Translator’

Table 6.27A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Volume’

Table 6.27B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Volume’

Table 6.28: Number of Terms Obtaining the Highest Scores in Different Catalogue

Codes

List of Abbreviations

Catalogue Codes:

AA 1908	Anglo-American code.1908
AACR 1967 NA	Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules,1st edition, 1967 North American Text
AACR 1967 BT	Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules,1st edition, 1967 British Text
AACR 2 1978	Anglo American Cataloguing Rules.2nd edition,1978
AACR 2R 1988	Anglo American Cataloguing Rules. 2nd edition Revised. 1988
AACR 2R 2002	Anglo American Cataloguing Rules. 2nd edition Revised 2002, updated 2003
ALA 1949	ALA Cataloguing rules for author and title entries.1949
CCC 1 1934	Classified Catalogue Code.1st edition.1934
CCC 3 1951	Classified Catalogue Code.3rd edition,1951
CCC 5 1965	Classified Catalogue Code.5th edition, 1965
RDA 2016	Resource Description and Access, 2016 release
RDC 1876	Rules for a dictionary catalogue.1876
RDC1904	Rules for a dictionary catalogue, 4th edition, 1904

Other Abbreviations:

Chap.	Chapter
Ed.	Edition
e.g.	exempli gratia (=example)
et al.	etalii (=And others)
etc.	Et cetera
i.e.	idest (= That is)
No.	Number
Rev.	revised
Sec.	Section
viz.	videlicet

Glossary

Borrowed term – Term taken from another language or from another subject field.

Circularity – If a concept is defined using a second concept and that second concept is defined using the term or elements of the term designating the first concept, the resulting definition is said to be circular.

Concept – Unit of knowledge created by a unique combination of characteristics.

Conciseness – Conciseness of definitions means definitions should be brief and to the point.

Concreteness – Concreteness of words means, words creating more direct sensory referents, supported by more semantic references, etc and as a result more impact on human mind as recall is concerned. For example *Author* is more concrete than *Creator*.

Consistency – Denotation of each term should be consistence with its broader term (i.e., the context). e.g., Author and Personal author.

Definition – Representation of a concept by a descriptive statement which serves to differentiate it from related concepts.

Extensional definition – Description of a concept by enumerating all of its subordinate concepts.

Homonymy – Relation between designations and concepts in a given language in which one designation represents two or more unrelated concepts.

Intentional definition – Which describes the intension of a concept by stating the super-ordinate concept and the delimiting characteristics.

Linguistic economy – A term should be as short as possible in length. e.g., *Term bank* instead of *Terminological data bank*.

Monosemy – Relation between designations and concepts in a given language in which one designation only relates to one concept.

Native language preference – Terms should be taken from native language as far as possible.

Neologism – New term coined for a given concept.

Polysemy – Relation between designations and concepts in a given language in which one designation represents two or more concepts sharing certain characteristics.

Positiveness – A definition should always be positive i.e. should describe what a concept is, not what it is not.

Preciseness – Preciseness means the accuracy. Definitions should not be too narrow or too broad.

Synonymy – Relation between or among terms in a given language representing the same concept.

Term – Verbal designation of a general concept in a specific subject field.

Terminography – Part of terminology work (3.6.1) concerned with the recording and presentation of terminological data.

Terminologization – Process by which a general language word or expression is transformed into a term.

Terminology – 1. Set of designations belonging to one special language.

2. Science studying the structure, formation, development, usage and management of terminologies in various subject fields.

Transparency – A term is considered transparent when the concept it designates can be inferred, at least partially without a definition. In other words its meaning is visible on its morphology.

Background

Cataloguing deals with the description of documents in a logical manner. Catalogue codes are the manifestations of rules and examples of practical cataloguing. Like other “sciences” a well-defined terminology is needed to communicate ideas as well as correct practice in the field of library cataloguing.

Objective

The objective of this research was to assess the evolution of cataloguing terminologies by studying various catalogue codes over time.

In order to achieve the aforesaid objective, attempts were made:

- (i) to show the evolution and occurrences of cataloguing terms in terminology sections of various catalogue codes, along with their synonyms and homonyms, and rank them according to their frequency of occurrences,
- (ii) to show the changes of terms and their definitions over time in different catalogue codes, and
- (iii) to evaluate the changes in cataloguing terminologies, i.e., the changes in terms and their definitions, in the light of the canons/guiding principles prescribed by the cataloguing authorities.

Methodology

To achieve the objective of the study, thirteen catalogue codes, spanning the years 1876 to 2016, were chosen to collect the necessary data. A systematically developed data sheet

was used to record the terms, their definitions, synonyms, and homonyms. The evolution of cataloguing terminology across time was measured using a scale.

Results

Cataloguing terms are evolving over time. Old terms become outdated and are no longer used in later times, whereas new ones are created in the new era. There are very few terms with a high frequency of occurrence (greater than fifty percent as per the study). Some terms have their homonyms and synonyms. The definitions of the same term have occasionally changed and occasionally remained constant. The evaluation study of terms and definitions demonstrates that the majority of cataloguing terms were created using linguistic concepts. As a result, library cataloguing has developed a systematic approach to coin and define terminology in a variety of contexts. Creation of new terms, the disappearance of useless terminology in later eras, or the change of the designations of the same concept in contemporary days demonstrate the dynamism of the subject cataloguing.

Keywords

Cataloguing, Terminology, Canons of Cataloguing, Catalogue Codes, Evolution of Cataloguing Terms, Evolution of Definitions, Evaluation of Cataloguing Terminologies, ISO704:2000, Synonyms, Homonyms, Transparency, Concreteness, Native Language Preference, Non-Circularity

Chapter-1

Introduction

Cataloguing deals with the description of documents. Catalogue codes are the manifestations of rules and examples for practical cataloguing, according to some intrinsic philosophy. Like other “sciences”, a well-defined terminology is needed to communicate ideas as well as correct practice in the field of library cataloguing.

It is an inevitable component of any catalogue code. At the beginning of Cutter Rules for Dictionary Catalogue (1876), we find a separate section on terminologies. Dr. S.R. Ranganathan was one of the pioneers in the field. He tried to develop cataloguing terminologies according to some guidelines and canons. The results were published in *Classified Catalogue Code* (1934), *Headings and canons* (1955) and many others.

1.1 Selection of the Research Problem

To understand the meaning of terminology, let us know the word term. There are many ways to describe concepts like symbols, formulas, etc. For example, H₂O stands for water. But term is the verbal designation of a general concept in a specific subject field and terminology is the study of structure, formation, development, usage and management of terms in various subject fields. From this definition we are informed about an important character of terminology, i.e., its ever-changing nature.

According to Prasad (1983)¹ terminology is a field where changes are frequent and at the same time terminologies enrich the concerned fields of study to a better perspective.

Terminologies are very essential in growing a subject, as they express the concepts related to the subject in an organized manner. Ranganathan (1967)² in his famous book *Prolegomena to library classification* has discussed the vagueness of our natural languages in describing a concept. He devised some canons related to terminology, which are discussed as canons of verbal plane. He made a thrust on context, currency and reticence.

Ranganathan (1955)³ also included terminologies as an essential component of catalogue codes. According to him, “to frame a code of rules entirely in a natural language is to code trouble sooner or later.” Like other terminologies, cataloguing terminologies are also not static, but very much dynamic in nature.

Terminologies change as they grow. Cataloguing terminologies are also not exceptions. At the time of studying different catalogue codes, new additions, changes of terms as well their definitions are frequently noticed. In recent published Resource Description and Access (RDA), which may be termed as AACR III, much dispersions in terminologies from AACR II are found. Ghosh & Das (2012)⁴ have made a comparative study of terminologies in AACR II and RDA. They identified 4 cases— term changed but

¹Prasad, K.N. (1983). *Development of terminology in the field of library classification with special reference to Indian school of thought: a case study* (Doctoral dissertation). Retrieved from <http://dspace.vidyanidhi.org.in:8080/dspace/handle/2009/4547>

²Ranganathan, S. R. (1967). *Prolegomena to library classification*. New Delhi. Asia Books.

³Ranganathan, S R. (1955). *Headings and canon: Comparative study of five catalogue codes*. Madras: S Viswanathan.

⁴Ghosh, A., & Das, A. (2012). Concept to term approach: a terminological study of catalogue codes. In *Trends and development in library and information science* (pp. 657-668). New Delhi: Zenith Publications. (Published as the proceedings of SAARC Conference for Library and Information Professionals, 2012).

definition unchanged, term unchanged but definition changed, both term and definition changed, and both term and definition unchanged. Empirically, some reasons of changes are identified like irrelevancy of terms, origin of new concepts, increasing precision, etc. Rodilla (1998: 88-94) (as cited in Munoz (n.d.))⁵ mentioned three criteria for evaluating terminologies namely, precision, emotional neutrality and stability, Precision means strict definition of terms, their monosemic nature, etc. Emotional neutrality ensures the existence of a term within a specific domain of knowledge. Stability refers the validity of a term during a long period of time.

After conducting a comprehensive literature search on LISA, ILSA, Shodhganga and various other directories of doctoral dissertations (see, Chapter-2: Literature Review), it was observed that in the domain of cataloguing, several terminologies are being used for proper communication and these terminologies underwent a substantial change from time to time.

1.2 Statement of the Problem and Research Questions

The problem of this research may be stated as “Assessment of the evolution of terminologies in library cataloguing codes since 1841.”

The statement of the research problem as furnished above along with a set of following relevant questions warrant to be resolved in course of this research work.

- i. Is there any change in use of terminologies in cataloguing over time? If yes, what are the changes in terminologies in library catalogue codes over time? How can they be known? What methodology should be adopted to measure such changes?
- ii. Is there any change in the definitions of the terms in library catalogue codes over time? If yes, how are the definitions changing in library catalogues over time? Are

⁵Munoz, M. S. (n.d.). *Terminology: Introduction*. Retrieved April 23, 2021, from <http://ocw.um.es/cc.sociales/terminologia/material-de-clase-1/unit-i.pdf>

the changes capable to precisely describe the concepts? How can they be known? What methodology should be adopted to understand this?

- iii. Are there any canons or guiding principles for assessing terminological changes in cataloguing? What are those? Is it possible to examine the changes in cataloguing terms in the light of the canons or guiding principles for assessing terminologies changes in the area? How can these be known? What methodology should be adopted to comprehend this?

1.3 Objectives of the Study

The objective of this research was to assess the evolution of cataloguing terminologies as well as the standardization of terms by studying various catalogue codes over time.

In order to achieve the aforesaid objective, attempts were made:

- To show the evolution and occurrences of cataloguing terms in terminology sections of various catalogue codes, along with their synonyms and homonyms, and rank them according to their frequency of occurrences.
- To show the changes of terms and their definitions over time in different catalogue codes.
- To evaluate the changes in cataloguing terminologies, i.e. the changes in terms and their definitions, in the light of the canons/guiding principles prescribed by the cataloguing authorities.

1.4 Methodology

Survey method had been adopted to achieve the objectives of the study. Different catalogue codes, originated in different period of time, were studied for the purpose.

Terms along with their definitions were collected based on some criteria. Substantial terms were sorted out based upon certain criteria. The range of variations in both designations and definitions were measured and assessed, keeping in view relevant canons/guiding principles.

1.4.1 Source Data: Selection of Codes

This research work made an endeavour to study catalogue codes in English language. Thirteen (13) catalogue codes, starting from RDC 1876, were chosen for the study. The selection was based on literary warrant, i.e. discussions of the codes on the literatures as well as in the syllabus of the different LIS schools in India. The British Museum code, as we know is considered the first established English language catalogue code, and is considered as a pioneer in using many relevant concepts on its famous “91 rules” like corporate body, cross references, etc. Though the code has no separate terminology section, but almost all the concepts as used on this code were also used and defined by the later codes. So, this study started from 1841, and physically the first code covered in the study was RDC 1876. The 13 codes covered under study are listed below:

1. Rules for dictionary catalogue by C.A. Cutter, 1st edition, published in 1876, i.e., RDC 1 (1876)
2. Rules for a dictionary catalogue by C.A. Cutter, 4th edition published in 1904, i.e., RDC 4 (1904)
3. Cataloguing rules; author and title entries [AA code] published in 1908, i.e., AA (1908)
4. Classified Catalogue Code, 1st edition, published in 1934, i.e., CCC 1 (1934)
5. Classified Catalogue Code, 3rd edition, published in 1951 i.e., CCC 3 (1951)
6. Classified catalogue code with additional rules for dictionary catalogue code, 5th edition, published in 1964, i.e., CCC 5 (1964)
7. ALA cataloguing rules for author and title, published in 1949, i.e., ALA (1949)
8. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules (British Text), published in 1967, i.e., AACR 1 BT (1967)
9. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules (North American Text), published in 1967, i.e., AACR 1 NAT (1967)

10. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd edition, published in 1978, i.e., AACR 2 (1978)
11. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd revised edition, published in 1988, i.e., AACR 2R (1988)
12. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2003 update, i.e., AACR (2003)
13. Resource Description and Access, 2016 release, i.e., RDA (2016)

1.4.2 Collection of Data: Selection of Terms

Terms were selected on the basis of the categorization made by Dr. S R Ranganathan⁶. They are as follows:

- Author or responsibility related: Corporate body, Sponsor, etc.
- Catalogue related terms: Union catalogue, etc.
- Document or work related: Adaptation, etc.
- Edition related terms: Title edition, etc.
- Entry related terms: Main entry, etc.
- Heading related terms: Access point, etc.
- Preliminary page related terms: Added title page, etc.
- Sections of entry related terms: Imprint, etc.
- Title related terms: Running title, etc.

A tabular data collection sheet was used for each term containing five columns, viz. Term, Definition, Type, UF, USE, and Remarks (if applicable) (See Appendix 1).

UF (used for) and USE are used for synonymous terms. If a term is connected to another term(s) by 'see' reference, then UF or USE column is filled up. If a term is individualized by a subject within a parenthesis then the term pair is considered as homonyms. For example Chart and Chart (Cartography) are considered as homonyms.

⁶ Ranganathan, S.R. (1964). *Classified catalogue code with additional rules for dictionary catalogue code* (5th ed.). New Delhi: Asia Publishing House.

1.4.3 Analysis

Analysis of data has been made with the following aspects:

1.4.3.1 Term Analysis

For analysis, 321 terms from 13 catalogue codes under nine categories had been selected.

1. **Used Term:** Used term means the terms having a definition against it under the terminology portion of each catalogue code. Used terms are classified in to nine major divisions Author related terms, Catalogue related terms, Document related terms, Edition related term, Entry related term, Heading related term, Preliminary page related terms, Title related term and Sections of entry related term. Occurrences of each term under each category are discussed critically.
2. **Unused Term (Synonyms):** Unused term means the terms in each catalogue code against which “see” reference has been used. In other words, unused terms are those terms which are replaced by another terms in a catalogue code. A critical study is made for unused terms also by stating their probable cause of non-preference in catalogue codes under study.
3. **Homonyms:** Homonyms are those terms individualized by a qualifier in parentheses. For example, Chart and Chart (Cartography). Few Homonymous terms are found in some catalogue codes. Their occurrences have been indicated with probable cause of occurrences.
4. **Rank Analysis of Used Terms:** Terms were ranked based on their occurrences in various catalogue codes. In 13 catalogue codes, a total of 321 terms were found under eight categories. The terms were arranged in decreasing order based on their occurrences. The rank quotients were calculated as the ratio of their occurrence with the total number of codes (i.e. 13). The core groups of terms were selected as the terms having rank quotients more than Fifty (50) percent. The core terms were examined according their types.

1.4.3.2 Analysis of Variations in Definitions

This section shows the variations in definitions of terms in different catalogue codes. This also shows the evolution of the concepts in different era. For the study of the definitions, the core terms having more than 50% occurrence value as used terms in 13 catalogue codes under study were taken on account. About 250 plus definitions of 27 core terms in 13 catalogue codes were found.

1.4.3.3 Assessment of Terminology

For the purpose, 27 terms and their 164 definitions from nine catalogue code (among 13 codes) were selected. The catalogue codes under the study were divided into five groups – RDC group, ALA group, CCC group, AACR group and RDA. For the evaluation, the first and the last codes of each group were taken into account. So, the codes selected for terminology evaluation were RDC 1 (1876), RDC 4 (1904), AA (1908), ALA (1949), CCC 1 (1934), CCC 5 (1965), AACR 1 BT (1967), AACR 2003 and RDA (2016). AACR 1 BT had been given priority over the North American text because of the closeness of the British text with the Paris principles, and Lubetzky's idea of case code (not condition code) was more than that of the North American Text⁷.

Terminology contains two parts – The designation or terms and the definition. To access a terminology under a subject domain, it is necessary to establish some parameters to access the terms as well as their definition. In this research project, an eleven-point scale is constructed by following the guidelines of ISO 704: 2000, Ranganathan's canons of terminology and Martin Scheele's Guidelines for Terminology. The eleven check points are as follows:

⁷Tikku, U.K. (1983). Anglo-American cataloguing rules 1908-1978: a state of the art. *Annals of library science and documentation*. 30 (3-4). 151-165.

A. For Terms

- Homonym free: Monosemy should be maintained, i.e., one term-many concepts should be avoided, e.g., Chart and Chart (Cartography) are homonyms. [T1]
Synonym free: One concept many terms should be avoided. [T2]
- Transparency: Should be transparent in conveying the meaning. [T3]
- Consistency: Species terms should be consistent with genus term, e.g., author, personal author, corporate author, etc. [T4]
- Concreteness: Terms should be concrete as far as possible, i.e., should have better understandability that create a thrust on human mind. [T5]
- Native language preference: Terms should be based on native language (in this case English) as far as possible. [T6]
- Linguistic economy: Terminological economy should be maintained, [T7]. Up to two worded terms, the linguistic economy value is assumed to be fully maintained. For three worded terms, it is assumed to be partially maintained. For more than three words, it is assumed to be denied totally. For example, *Library catalogue* is less economic than *Catalogue*.

B. For Definitions

For assessment of definition, four criteria have been selected, which are as follows:

1. Conciseness: Definition should be brief but to-the-point by providing a comprehensive idea about the concept being defined by coordinating all necessary components (D1).
2. Preciseness: Concept should be accurately defined. Precise definitions are generally brief, and they indicate the concept accurately with high quality of generalization, including all necessary attributes. If necessary attributes are missing, preciseness hampered if a term is defined in two senses, preciseness also hampered (D2).
3. Non Circularity: Definition should be non-circular, i.e., it should not use the term itself which is describing (D3).

4. Positiveness: Definition should be positive, i.e., it should be always affirmative in sense (D4).

C. Score Values for Scaling

For scoring each category, i.e. T1-T7 and D1-D4, a three level scoring pattern was followed. If the criteria were fully matched, then 1 had been assigned. If the criteria were partially fulfilled, then 0.5 had been assigned. If the criteria were not fulfilled at all, zero (0) had been assigned.

1.5 Significance of the Study

Terminological development is the attribute of a growing subject. The study of terminological development in cataloguing is concerned with the thoughts of the experts to describe a term more and more precisely and also incorporate new ideas. Finally, it serves as a means of communication amongst the various stakeholders in the field.

Terminological research is a never-ending process. The nature of documents is evolving, as are the methods of cataloguing, and numerous metadata standards are being created to more precisely define a document. Only the small specialist's class, according to Ranganathan⁸, can grow or change the terminologies. He also remarked that cataloguing terminology is not something that can be done once and for all. We can see a variety of terms in the recently published RDA that may be labelled as AACR3, which demonstrates Ranganathan's foresight. He did advise, however, that terminologies should be altered with care, caution, and adherence to the Canons of Terminology, which are the result of scientific techniques. This research work could be a small step in the direction of this inspection.

⁸ Ranganathan, S.R. (1955). Standard for lay-out of catalogue code. *Annals of Library Science*. 2 (1). 28-32

1.6 Style of Referencing

American Psychological Association (APA) referencing style, 6th Edition is used for in text citations, and making references at the end of the chapters.

1.7 Chapters

Chapter-1 (**Introduction**) outlined the background of taking over the research project, statement of the research problem, research questions, objective of the study, research methodology, and significance of the study.

Chapter-2 (**Literature Review**) has provided a comprehensive literature on the area of the current research.

Chapter-3 (**Terminology: Concept, Component and Evaluation with Special Reference to the Field of Library Cataloguing**) deals with the concept of terminology as a whole. Components of terminological study are discussed with suitable examples. A scale for evaluation of terminology, based on the canons and guidelines as prescribed by S R Ranganathan, Martin Scheele and ISO 404:2000 was designed.

Chapter-4 (**Catalogue Codes and their Terminologies**) deals with the terms as provided in the terminology sections of various catalogue codes under study, i.e. from RDC 1876 to RDA 2016. Terms under the study were classified in to eight broad categories, like Author related terms, Entry related terms, etc. Under each category, occurrence of each individual term has been examined critically. Also shows the occurrence of various terms in various codes at various times. This chapter also discussed the synonyms and homonyms of terms found in different catalogue codes.

Chapter-5 (**Evolution of Cataloguing Concepts: Changes in the Definitions of Cataloguing Terms**) shows the variation of cataloguing concepts in different codes at different times by analysing their definitions. The variations of definitions are classified in to some broad categories like “broader to narrower”, “narrower to broader”, General to specific”, etc.

Chapter-6 (**Evaluation of Cataloguing Terminologies**) has presented the evaluation of terms and their definitions as provided in different catalogue codes by a measurement scale, as given in Chapter 3. Performance of the terms as well as the definitions are critically discussed. The codes obtaining highest values for each term and their definitions are also shown.

Chapter-7 (**Summary of Findings and Conclusion**) comes to a generalisation, based on a summary of the research findings.

Chapter – 2

Literature Review

Cataloguing terminology is widely acknowledged as an important component of a catalogue code. C.A. Cutter was the pioneer in recognizing the significance of technical terminology in a catalogue code. In his code, he included a section on technical terminology. However, as time has passed, cataloguing terminology has evolved to include new dimensions that are distinct from previous concepts (Kent & Lancour, 1974). A detailed literature review was conducted at the outset of this research project to determine and identify knowledge gaps in the broad area of cataloguing terminology growth and development.

2.1 Observations

The observations derived from the literature review are presented under the following subthemes:

- Meaning of Cataloguing
- Necessity of Cataloguing in Digital Era
- Catalogue and Cataloguing Research: Development and Changes

- Terminology: Meaning and Scope
- Terminology as a Part of Catalogue Codes
- Catalogue Codes: History
- Cataloguing Terminology Research: Scope set by the Pioneers

2.1.1 Meaning of Cataloguing

AACR 2R defined catalogue as “A list of library materials contain in a collection, a library, or a group of libraries, arrange according to some definite plan”(Joint Steering Committee for Revision of AACR. & American Library Association, 2002). Ranganathan (1968) defined the term 'library catalogue' as a - 'list of documents in a library or in a collection forming a portion of it'.

Harrod’s glossary define catalogue as a list of books, maps or other items, arrange in some definite order (Harrod, 2000). So it is clear that all the definitions are almost similar in nature. At the beginning stage of the library (about at 1700 B.C.) the concept of library catalogue still existed but not in modern form. At that time, bibliographic description was recorded on clay tablets and such other things (Drake, 2003). So, the necessity of recording bibliographic description for retrieval of documents was felt from the beginning of library concept. Bianchini & Guerrini (2009) classified the two functions of catalogue in a precise way-one is to find a specific document of choice (specific search function) and another is to search for like materials (collocating function).

2.1.2 Necessity of Cataloguing in Digital Era

Now it is a very vital question that in the era of Google is there any necessity of traditional library catalogue. A slogan was raised as “Marc Must Die and Google Should Exist”. It was also stated that “The catalogue is in decline, its process and structure are unattainable” (Wakimoto, 2009). This changing environment was supported by few reasons like enrich content, growth of electronic resources etc., but this statement was denied because it is proved that Google can provide *something for everyone but catalogue can provide the required document for everyone*. So while there is a question of quality information retrieval, Google fails, but catalogue can do. The role of catalogue has been changed in displaying enrich content like summaries,

etc. with the traditional bibliographic data, but catalog is still necessary for researchers. The ALA stated “all information resources that are provided directly or indirectly by the library regardless of technology, format, or methods of delivery, should be readily, equally and equitably accessible to all library users” are encouraging for library professionals (American Library Association, 2019). Wakimoto (2009) also mentioned that traditional library catalogue at the local level can be integrated into a global system by enriched metadata schemas of modern information technology (IT) environment. Gorman (2000) criticized about the misleading concept of “unusefulness” of traditional catalogue codes in digital environment. According to him, “which electronic resources should be catalogued and how shall we preserve them?” is a more important question than “how should we catalogue electronic resources?”

2.1.3 Catalogue and Cataloguing Research: Development and Changes

Dorothy M Norris (as cited in Bhattacharyya (1969)) classified the cataloguing chronologically as Ancient Period (up to 1100 AD), Medieval Period (1100-1400 AD) and Collegiate Cataloguing Period (1400-1700 AD). According to Bhattacharyya (1969) the cataloguing at the first two stages was based on conjectural evidences and so attempt to made search for research in these periods is not relevant. Research evidences may therefore be searched at the modern periods.

The cataloguing started its journey through the bibliographies and trade catalogues of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. The catalogue entries were then arranged according to alphabetical order. The compilers of those bibliographies had to face problems, very often, with regard to:

- determination of authorship
- variant forms of author's names
- subject indexing
- pieces of information needed to identify a particular document (Bhattacharyya, 1969).

So, the era of cataloguing research began with the aforesaid problems. Several catalogue codes were then published as a result of empirical researches. However,

most of them were the results of individual efforts. The first catalogue code was published by the British Museum in 1787, namely “*Librorum impressorum qui in Museo Britannico adservantur catalogues*” with a joint effort of P. M. Maty, S. Harper, and S. Ayseough. Panizzi framed his famous “91 rules” in 1841. C.A. Cutter introduced the guiding principles for cataloguing in his work, entitled- 'Rules for dictionary catalogue' in 1876. According to Cutter (1876), the *objects* of catalogue are as follows:

1. To enable a person to find a book of which either
 - A. the author
 - B. the title
 - C. the subject is known
2. To show what the library has
 - D. by a given author
 - E. on a given subject
 - F. in a given kind of literature
3. To assist in the choice of the book
 - G. as to its edition (bibliographically)
 - H. as to its character (literary or topical).

According to Ranganathan (as cited in Welsh & Batley, 2012), a catalogue should be designed to:

- Disclose to every reader his or her document;
- Secure for every document, its reader;
- Save the time of the reader; and for this purpose;
- Save the time of the staff.

Thus, the threshold period of catalogue code emerged with a hope that a catalogue must be and should be capable of satisfying the document/ information need irrespective of form, language, etc. in a very quick time. With the passing of time, the nature of documents and needs of the users, both are getting changes, and thus continuous research and development is necessary to achieve the core objectives of catalogues in a new environment.

2.1.4 Terminology: Meaning and Scope

Prasad (1982) stated that terms are the units of a language. British Standard Institution (Text Reference?) defined the term as- a word, phrase or a symbol descriptive of the subject content or a part of the subject content of a subject. So, terms are necessary to describe a concept related to a subject domain. Ranganathan (1955b) defined terminology as a different form of natural language used as meta language to build up the technical language of a particular subject.

The word terminology has two meanings, as stated by Prasad (1982). In the first sense, “it is the totality of all the set of terms denoting a set of concepts occurring in a subject field”. In the second sense it connotes “an interdisciplinary field of knowledge distilled out of the concepts and theories in fields such as linguistics, logic, general semantics, information science and general system theory”. So, in the first sense it is a product to consult by the subject experts and in the second sense it is the study of terminology itself with the help of various disciplines.

The first sense terminology can serve the following purposes (Prasad, 1982):

- communicate precisely the knowledge among subject experts
- communicate between students and teachers in a particular subject field
- translation of information from one language to another
- Speedy retrieval of specialized information among information analysts.

2.1.5 Terminology as a Part of Catalogue Codes

The use of proper terminology was inevitable for correct practice of cataloguing. In Cutter's Rules for dictionary catalogue the first use of a separate section of terminology named “Definitions” was found. Cutter stated the importance of terminology as- *“there is such confusion in the use of terms in the various prefaces to catalogues- a confusion that at once springs from and leads to confusion of thought and practice,- that is worthwhile to propose a systematic nomenclature”* (Cutter, 1876). Ranganathan (1955a) opined that a catalogue code should begin with a chapter of terminology.

Ranganathan also stated that terminology is necessary to describe particular ideas rather than to use common terms he also stated that by using standard terminology in cataloguing we gain great deal of clarity and economy (Ranganathan, 1967). Bhattacharya (1969) opined that the correct practice of a discipline is largely depended on the verbal apparatus used to ideas and communicate them this is also true for library cataloguing according to him terminology should be dry- as – dust and without the slightest touch of fuzziness Cutter also thought likewise, and he first introduced the terminology as a part of catalogue code in 1876 (Kent & Lancour, 1974).

Ranganathan said that terminology is one made is not static, but it must be change time to time, but this change should be made with some scientific principle which he termed as canons (Ranganathan, 1955a).

2.1.6 History of Catalogue Codes

It is crucial to study the evolution of catalogue codes, as the terminologies of each code represent the demand of cataloguing community of that particular period.

Cutter stated the functions of cataloguing at a time when library documents were mostly books or book-like tangible item. But now the scenario has changed totally. Today's libraries collect not only books but also, they deal with electronic documents, both online and offline. So, in modern context “the catalogue can and should include not only traditional tangible resources but also unique hidden treasures, electronic resources, e-books and e-journals, digital collections, and selected Web resources” (as cited in Wakimoto, 2009).

According to Wakimoto (2009), modern descriptive catalogue should have the following features:

- **Capable to display the enriched contents of the document:** Traditional AACR2 and LCSH based descriptive catalogue often unable to meet the users’ needs of finding, identifying and selecting their desired resources, e.g. a mere subject heading *English literature-Collections* may not reflect the inner contents of the book until the content page or an abstract of the document is linked with the catalogue.

- **Reveal the hidden resources:** Hidden resources generally means the rare books, archival materials, manuscripts, etc. Sometimes the unknown new arrivals may be considered as hidden resources. These documents can be included easily in OPACs and also made searchable. But the historical values of those documents must be revealed to the users, which were not considered in traditional catalogue. Additionally, the physical image may be incorporated with the description.
- **Maintain both print and electronic in a common platform:** Separate listing of print and electronic documents subscribed by the library often create confusions to the users at the time of searching. Catalogue of all types of documents should be maintained in a common platform.
- **Include institutional repositories and web resources:** In most of the cases, the IDRs are outside the library catalogue. So the users need to search both in catalogue database and in IDR for satisfying their requirements. This procedure is time-consuming, which violets the 4th law of Library science. These two databases should be linked anyway.

Let us have a look at evolution of library catalogue codes in different periods.

2.1.6.1 PRE-Anglo-American Period

16th century: The development of cataloging was influenced greatly by the practice of the bibliographers, e.g. In *Bibliotheca Universalis* by Conrad Gesner in 1545 arranged the entries alphabetically according to the author. Thus, the concept of author as a main entry heading was developed.

17th Century: In this era the cataloguing was challenged by some serious problems like-

- Determination of authorship among various personal names with shared and mixed responsibility
- Variant forms of the author's name
- Preparation of subject indexes

- Items of information to be chosen for bibliographic description

These challenges were resolved in the following ways-

1. Preparation of main entry for a document under the author's name
2. Preparation of cross-reference entries from the variant forms of the author's names
3. Preparation of subject entries
4. Preparation of cross-references for synonymous subjects
5. Recording the imprint information in the sequence place, publisher and year

Some bibliographies, contributed on developing cataloguing rules in this period are like, *De scriptis medicis* (1637) by Joannes Antonides van der Linden; *Incunabula typographiae* (1688) by Cornelilius A Beughem, etc.

The last quarter of the 18th century, beginning of the modern period of cataloguing: The British Museum published its catalogue in two volumes in 1787. The title of the catalogue was *Librorum Impressorum qui in Museo Britannico Adservantur Catalogus*. The compiler of this catalogue was P.M. Maty, S. Harper and S. Ayseough. Though the theory governing the compilation of this catalogue was not explicit, but definitely it was the product of some observational and empirical research. This work was continued with a new edition of 7 volumes, published in between 1813 and 1819.

The British Museum authority decided to have one complete alphabetical catalogue for their whole collection. Henry Baber, the keeper of printed books, was requested to put up a proposal for this work. He suggested the name of Antonio Genesio Mario Panizzi (popularly known as Anthony Panizzi) for this work. Baber himself formulated 'Sixteen Rules' for cataloguing work. But some of these rules were not satisfied to Panizzi. Baber's rules gave the answers to the following questions:

1. Source of information to prepare the main entry
2. Elements of main entry with their sequence
3. Choice of main entry heading
4. Rendering of heading and title

5. Application of individualizing element to heading
6. Notes in the main entry
7. Style of writing
8. Arrangement of entries

So, these rules may be regarded as the earliest ancestor of catalogue codes.

Panizzi's 91 Rules: Panizzi associated with the drafting of the “Rules for the Compilation of the catalogue of printed books in the British Museum”. This was adopted by the library in 1839 and first published as a part of “British Museum Catalogue” in 1841. These rules are considered as the first detailed code drafted for practical cataloguing. These rules were formulated on the basis of some empirical facts gained from the experience about the library catalogue as a document finding tool. This catalogue code was a pioneer in introducing some new concepts like:

1. **Objectives of Library Catalogue:** A catalogue of a library is intended principally to give an accurate inventory of the books which it comprises; and is in general consulted either to ascertain whether a particular book is in the collection, or to find what works it contains on a given subject.
2. **Classed Catalogue:** Panizzi used the term class catalogue which is nothing but a catalogue in two parts, one part having each of the entries arranged under a subject heading (in words). This part is arranged in a systematic way according to a predetermined plan of a scheme of classes. The other part arranged under the name of an author or its equivalent and arranged alphabetically.
3. **Corporate Authorship:** This idea was first introduced by Panizzi. Anonymous books, pseudonymous books and periodical publications and many other relevant terms were also considered in Panizzi's code.

Panizzi's famous work is popularly known as “91 Rules”. He formulated these rules in collaboration with J. W. Jones, Edward Edwards, Thomas Watts etc. Panizzi acknowledged these persons. This implies existence of good amount of research in cataloguing before Panizzi. Panizzi's rules influenced the cataloguing practice of many libraries in the English-speaking world.

Crestadoro's The art of making catalogue of libraries: In spite of the great effort of Panizzi, the “91 rules” was not free from controversy. Especially it had some problems for adapting in the public libraries. Meanwhile, the public libraries act was adopted in Great Britain in 1850. Crestadoro devised a code 'The Art of Making Catalogue of Libraries' in the year 1856. It was a bipartite code. The main part described preparation of 'Principal Entries'. According to this code, the principal entries are to be made under the name of the authors, and they will be arranged by accession numbers. Another part described preparation of short index entries derived from the principal entries, and they were arranged under the names of authors and subjects. Subject headings were prepared by following the title as given in the title page. Crestadoro was the librarian of Manchester Public Library. He applied these rules mainly to the public libraries. Though he is criticized for arranging the main entries by accession numbers, but it is to be noted that at that time no official classification scheme was published.

Jewett's Smithsonian Report on the Construction of Catalogues of Libraries....: C.C. Jewett published a code in 1852 under the title “*Smithsonian Report on the Construction of Catalogues of Libraries.....*”. It is the first American code. This code was based on the author main entry. It was also supplemented by an alphabetical topical index. Jewett was influenced by the work of Panizzi and his work is a mixture of developmental research, observational research and empirical research.

Cutter's Contribution: Beginning of Terminology: If the completeness of the catalogue code is considered, Cutter must be the pioneer. His code was an author-title code. The reason behind this was the fact that most of the user's approach was the author at that time. Cutter was the first person who formulated the objectives of the library catalogue in a very distinct manner. His code was published in the year 1876 as 'Rules for a Dictionary Catalogue (RDC)'. It was a pure dictionary catalogue with four distinct parts as author catalogue, title catalogue, subject catalogue and form catalogue. He also prescribed rules for choice, rendering and style of writing for each section of the description. Another notable characteristic of this code is that it first provided a set of terms under the heading 'definitions' which was considered the first effort of making terminology of cataloguing. Cutter was the first person to frame definite rules for making subject headings. Ranganathan appreciated the code has

“None of the earlier drafts set forth cataloging rules in a systematic or exhaustive way...RDC was the first code to reach beyond these limitations...RDC is indeed a classic. Its influence has been overpowering. It inhibits free rethinking even today... it appears to have been the chief source of later codes in the English language. Being a one man's creation, it has been largely apprehended intuitively...”

Prussian Instructions: In 1890, the Royal Library of Berlin made some changes in 'Instruction für die Ordnung der Titel im Alphabetischen Zettelkatalog der Königl. und Universitätsbibliothek zu Breslau'. Thus, a new code evolved by the Prussian government in 1896. The name of the code was 'Instruktionen für die Alphabetischen Kataloge der Preussischen Bibliotheken' which is popularly known as 'Prussian Instructions'. (Kent & Lancour, 1974).

2.1.6.2 Anglo American Period 1908-2005: Single and Joint Efforts

Anglo American Code 1908: The catalogue codes which are discussed in the earlier sections, mostly designed by the individuals. But at the beginning of the 20th century, the corporate endeavor started to design a joint code. Melvil Dewey suggested UK and USA to take the responsibility for designing such a code for use in English-speaking countries. As a result, a code entitled 'Cataloguing Rules: Author and Title Entries' was published in 1908. This code was highly influenced by the Library of Congress Rules (1905). The unique feature of this code was the attempt of distinguishing between society and association with institution. The main criticism of this code is that it adopted different rules for cataloguing for UK and USA. Though it was a trend setter in cataloguing world, but it faced various criticisms also. It was designed to satisfy “the requirements of larger libraries of a scholarly character” (American Library Association, 1908). So, requirements of many small libraries were ignored. Sometimes the detailed nature of rules even crossed the purview of Panizzi's code of 1841 and thus the compilers may have an idea of a bigger library even that of British Museum (Needham, 1964).

ALA Code 1941: The limitations of AA code 1908 were started to expose to the professional world. There were so many unofficial changes to the rules of AA 1908 as suggested by the Library of Congress. In 1932, J.C.M. Hanson recommended to publish a new edition of the code with necessary additions, expansions and improvements. As a result, the revised rules appeared in 1941 as a sole venture of

American Library Association and this is known as 'ALA Rules 1941'. These rules were labeled as overelaborate code and was likely to make cataloguing unduly expensive. This code was drafted by the Americans only due to the absence of the British librarians as World War II was going on at that time,

ALA Code 1949: A.D. Osborn in his classic article '*Crisis in Cataloguing*' (1941) discussed the philosophy of catalogue codes and brought out its relationship in comparison with the cataloguing situation. He criticized the over-elaborate characteristics of ALA 1941 Code, and also stated that “*Codification tends to obscure reasons and principles*”. Osborn advocated for simpler and few numbers of rules based on principles (Gorman, 2000). So, the transformation starts from “case code” to “condition code”.

As a result of this criticism, a review committee was established by ALA to consider the revised ALA Catalogue Rules from a standpoint of the library administrator as well as the cataloguer, particularly with the regard to the question of elaboration and of expense. As a result of the recommendations of this committee, the newly revised code was published in 1949. Ranganathan described this code as follows- “... *Such a labyrinth of committees deliberating through two decades cannot be expected to produce a natural whole. The same life element cannot be expected to breathe through every rule. Such a code cannot be expected to be an organic unity with no element of redundancy or inconsistency. And yet for a committee made code not charged with the personality of a single author, ALA is a remarkable achievement*” (Tikku, 1983).

ALA 1949 code did not include the rules of description. So, the Library of Congress published “Rules for descriptive cataloguing in the Library of Congress” in 1949 also. These two codes - ALA 1949 and LC 1949 are popularly known as “Red Book” and “Green Book” respectively according to their colours of binding (Knowlton, 2009).

International Agreements in Cataloguing Practice: A Step Forward to Standardization: Standardization means existence of uniform rules to exchange bibliographic information. This will be helpful in the acquisition and the recording of foreign materials in the libraries worldwide. This will also result economy in bibliographical activities. In these circumstances, need for an international catalogue

code was felt. In 1956, IFLA described the then situation as follows, “*Most of the catalogue codes in current use are not based on any clearly defined principles... To detect certain converging tendencies, both in the departures made by the newer codes from earlier tradition and in the proposals made by various critics of established practice...*”. So, an effort to achieve international agreements in cataloguing practices was started. Meanwhile, J.C.M. Hanson published the book entitled, 'A *Comparative Study of Cataloguing Rules based on the Anglo-American Code of 1908*'. Ranganathan also published a book 'Heading and Canons' by comparing five catalogue codes in the year 1955. All these events encouraged IFLA to adopt a proposal to hold a worldwide conference with a goal of seeking agreement on certain basic cataloguing principles.

ICCP: This conference is popularly known as *Paris Conference*, which was held in 1961 in Paris and its official name was *International Conference on Cataloguing Principles (ICCP)*. The general principles on the unification of cataloguing rules were evolved as a result of deliberations and discussions. Some general principles are as follows:

1. **Functions of the Catalogue:** The catalogue should be an efficient instrument for ascertaining,
 - i. i. Whether the library contains a particular book specified by its author and title; or if no author is named in the book, its title alone; or if author and title are inappropriate or insufficient for identification, a suitable substitute for the title.
 - ii. ii. Which works by a particular author and which editions of a particular work are in the library
2. **Structure of the Catalogue:** To fulfill the above-mentioned functions, the catalogue should contain:
 - i. i. At least one entry for each book catalogued and
 - ii. ii. More than one entry relating to any book whenever this is necessary in the interest of the user or because of the characteristics of the book (e.g., when several authors or collaborators have shared in the creation of the book)

3. **Kinds of Entry:** ICCP described three types of entries namely main entry, added entries and reference entries.

- i. **Main Entry:** It must be a full entry giving all the particulars necessary for identifying the book
- ii. **Added Entries:** These entries should be based on the main entry and repeating under other heading's information giving in it
- iii. **Reference Entries:** These entries direct the reader to another place in the catalogue

The statement of general principles was submitted to IFLA conference at Berne in 1962 and the Committee on Uniform Cataloguing Rules of IFLA in their meeting arrived some resolutions of designing an international catalogue code based on Paris principles (Sengupta, 1964).

AACR 1967: As discussed in earlier sections, ICCP was a milestone in international cooperation in the field of cataloguing. Though Gorman stated that ICCP principles containing “many errors of omission and commission, are vaguely worded, and do not form an adequate basis for author-title cataloguing codes”. In spite of its shortcomings, ICCP had a great influence on the catalogue codes of the 1960s. As a result of efforts involving a number of meetings, at last the Anglo American Cataloguing Rules (AACR) appeared in 1967. The salient features of AACR 1967 are as follows:

- It is a conditional code based on authorship (in contrast with case codes as AA 1949),
- Arrangement is more logical,
- Rules are consistent and comprehensive,
- Keeps economy in cataloging,
- Satisfy the needs of cataloguers and library education simultaneously

The code was not free from criticism. The most unfortunate matter was that it had two separate text - British and North American. The British text was more close to the *Paris Principles* (Tikku, 1983).

ISBD and MARC: In late 1960s and early 1970s, two new ideas evolved—Machine Readable Cataloguing and International Standard Bibliographic Description. They are complementary to each other. ISBD is a standard for bibliographic description. Whereas, MARC is a framework standard for communicating bibliographic data through computers (Gorman, 2000).

AACR II 1978: The second edition of AACR published in 1978 under the supervision of Joint Steering Committee for Revision of AACR which was set up by ALA in 1974. Paul Winkler and Michael Gorman were the two editors. AACR II have some distinguishing characteristics as compared to AACR I.

- Structure is more logical and coherent. Unlike AACR I (where the rules were in three parts), in AACR II there are two parts. The first one is *bibliographic description* and the other one is *choice of headings*.
- AACR II strictly follows ISBD at its description part.
- AACR II provides three levels of bibliographic descriptions for the requirements of different types of libraries.
- It de-emphasizes the concept of 'main entry' and concentrates more on the access points.
- It contains a multilingual and multinational approach than its previous counterparts.

Gorman (2000) commented that AACR 2 should not be considered as an edition of AACR 1 (both BT and NT) but it should have been designated by a new name as unlike AACR 1, AACR 2 was truly the first unified code for cataloguing as per Lubetzkyan schools of thought. In later editions of AACR 2 (i.e., 1988 revised edition and updates of 1998, 2003, etc.) no remarkable changes of rules are noticed.

International Cataloguing Principles (ICP): The Paris principles were based on printed documents and traditional card catalogues. In 2003 the first IFLA Meeting of Experts on an International Cataloguing Code (IMEICC) was held in Frankfurt was held to frame new cataloguing principles in digital environment. This demand of new cataloguing principles was raised due to the fact that the nature of document was changed abruptly.

While terminologies are concerned, many changes have been seen in between Paris Principles (PP) and International Cataloguing Principles (ICP). The terms used in PP as “book”, “authors”, “main entries”, “added entries”, “editions”. The terms suggested by ICP are more “generalized and abstract” (Creider, 2009). ICP used “access points” in place of “main” and “added” entries. “books” are replaced by “bibliographic resources”. “Creators” is used instead of “authors”. The term “catalogue” is replaced by “bibliographic” and “authority” records. There are so many such examples of new terms coined in ICP.

2.1.6.3 Classified Catalogue Code Era

Classified Catalogue Code (1934): As a mathematician, Ranganathan made an attempt to design a catalogue code based on strong philosophy and logic. He himself described the birth of CCC as a 'revolt' against the cataloguing practice at that time. He mentioned five causes behind the genesis of CCC:

1. **Improper teaching method of cataloguing practice:** At that time, each rule of AA code (1908) was taken by itself to be put in the memory. But no attempt was made to present the rules as a system.
2. **The unscientific nature of the AA code:** The AA code was skeleton, it mixed up the author entry and the subject entry and also lacking the unity in many of its rules.
3. **Ignoring the classified catalogue comparing with dictionary catalogue:** At that time the Carnegie Library of Pittsburgh and the Mitchel Library of Glasgo catalogue codes were existing but not a single word was said about these codes and also their differences with their dictionary counterparts.
4. **Differences between Theory and Practice:** There were several discrepancies between the rules taught in the theory classes and their adoptions in the practical classes. No explanation was present.
5. **Overemphasize about format, collation and imprint**

Philosophy of CCC: CCC was based on the famous five laws of Library Science by Ranganathan. He put a philosophy on document finding system as “A library Catalogue should be so designed as 1. To disclose to every reader his book, 2. To

secure for every book its reader 3. To save the time of the reader, 4. For this purpose, to save the time of the staff”.

Unique features of CCC:

1. It was a complete catalogue code with philosophy, rules, examples, interpretations, rules for subject entries, writing styles and many others.
2. It was based on the five laws of Library Science
3. It developed the technical terminology to a great extent
4. It distinguished each and every type of entry for a classified catalogue
5. It followed the principles of unity by recognizing the unit operations like choice, rendering and recording of catalogue work
6. It described the rules for rendering the Hindu and Muslim names more elaborately than any other earlier codes
7. It recognized the unique feature of making the subject headings by analyzing the class numbers
8. It was a pioneer in providing of an ideal catalogue code
9. It stated different problem areas in cataloguing for further research (Kent & Lancour, 1974).

2.1.6.4 FRBR: Reincarnation of Cataloguing and Birth of RDA

FRBR or Functional requirements for Bibliographic Records first published in 1998 by IFLA and the final report was published in 2009.

The objectives of FRBR were stated as “to delineate in clearly defined terms the functions performed by the bibliographic records with respect to various media, applications and user needs” (IFLA, 2009). In other words, it endeavors to define in a systematic way what it is that the users expect to find information about in a bibliographic record and how that information is used (Bianchini & Guerrini, 2009).

FRBR has defined the functions of bibliographic records as:

- to **find** materials correspond to user stated search criteria;
- to **identify** the exact material those have been found;
- to **select** an entity according to user's need (e.g., select a document in user's preferred language)

- to **obtain** a particular document (e.g., To place a purchase order or to submit a loan request) (Library of Congress, 2012).

So FRBR established the functions of catalogue in another way but having no big differences as the objectives set up by Ranganathan and Cutter.

Resource Description and Access (RDA): To cope up the cataloguing of digital documents, a cataloguing code RDA has been developed. Coyle & Hillmann (2007) mentioned some prominent facts behind the development of RDA, like changes in information resources, changes in catalogue technology and scope, changes in environment, etc. RDA is based on FRBR philosophy. But the most striking features of RDA is the abandonment of ISBD and that was firmly criticized by Gorman (2016). He opined that framing RDA rules are nothing but wastage of time and money. It could have been done more cheaply and promptly by slight modifications of AACR2.

2.1.6.5 Cataloguing in Digital Era

The basic purpose of library catalogue is to inform the users about the collection of the library or a group of libraries. The objectives set by C.A. Cutter also reflects the purpose of catalogue distinctly. Nowadays, it is stated sometimes that catalogue is not needed in digital era or in the other words MARC must die and Google is alive. But is it true? If the necessity of the cataloguing really ended, then is there any significance of recent meetings like IMEICC? It is to be remembered that the concepts like FRBR emerged to make the catalogue more effective in digital era. In earlier days, catalogue was just a locating tool. But, in modern days, as FRBR model advocates, the catalogue should be a tool for finding, identifying and selecting. Actually, the FRBR model has no contradiction with the traditional model. Traditional model was designed at the age of printed documents. But FRBR model is related to millions bits of information available in network.

2.1.6.6 Changes in the Cataloguing World

The methods of preparing library catalogue entries have changed abruptly in last few years due to various factors among which the advancement of IT is the prime. Some notable facts caused by IT are:

- Changes in form (from printed to digital)

- Changes in document storage place (from traditional library building to modern IDRs)
- Changing need of users to navigate *information ocean* caused by internet (early users searched mainly for documents, but today's users search for information and information related to an information) (Welsh & Batley, 2012).

To cope up with this new environment, today's cataloguers are needed to execute following activities:

- **To handle the new forms of material:** Printed documents are now being replaced rapidly by their digital counterparts. To search in this digital environment, traditional catalogue should change its form with relationship models like FRBR.
- **Third party cataloguing:** In digital environment, it is very much easy to import or export catalogue data among the libraries. For this, an effective data interchange catalogue must emerge in a new form.
- **Use of computer in cataloguing:** In modern times, OPACs are more popular than card catalogues. But OPACs are handled by the artificial intelligence of the computer. So, linking of various bibliographic components is necessary for effective searching and retrieval in computer environment. This is another reason for a 'new' catalogue code.

Today there are many sophisticated tools like metadata, metadata harvesting, copy cataloguing etc. All these things ultimately support the retrieval of information worldwide. All these tools support the basic cataloguing principles of accessing the information. Google's mission is "organising the world's information". They promise for finding something for everyone. So, Google's search has a high recall value. On the other hand, the objectives of catalogue are quite different, i.e., to organize and provide intellectual access to selected information resources for a specific community of users. So, catalogue is still the best metadata repository for precise searching. A library catalogue will never be google, nor should they be (Wakimoto, 2009). But, the catalogue must be well-equipped for effective and precise search in web environment also. This is the most prominent cause of emergence of FRBR or RDA.

2.1.7 Cataloguing Terminology Research: Scope Set by the Pioneers

Ranganathan stated that terminologies are established by a small group of specialists. But they certainly are not for all times. Terminologies must change with “notice, circumspection and conformity with canons of terminology” (Ranganathan, 1955b). It clearly indicates the scope of research studies on growth of terms and their evaluations in the field of library cataloguing. Indian school of thought led by S.R. Ranganathan always advocated for terminology research. Ranganathan himself set some Canons of terminology. Those are as follows:

- The term should have a unique meaning, homonym should be avoided.
- There should be consistency in the denotation of an idea in whatever combination it occurs; Different terms should not be used to represent one and the same idea in different combinations.
- The terms for allied ideas should be cognate, but differentiated
- The intended idea should be represented and not any aberration from it.
- The idea should be denoted directly and not obliquely.
- The term is to be truly suggestive of the true function and not a mistaken one.
- The term should be suggestive of the true genesis of the idea denoted and not of any mistaken one (Ranganathan & Bhattacharyya, 1968).

Martin (1961) stated the guidelines for terminology construction, which supported philosophically the ideas of Ranganathan. According to him, terms should:

- ensure unequivocal linguistic comprehension of the technical field.
- Synonym free
- homonym free
- not to be created newly for old and established ones
- should be self-explanatory from the ordinary meaning of the words, without need for closer definition (Scheele, 1961).

Ranganathan also guided a research project by K.D. Puranik on cataloguing terms. His further attempts on terminology researches were documented in classic works like *Heading and Canons*, *Classified Catalogue Code*, and *Glossary* of Professor Bhattacharyya, a disciple of Ranganathan also said that terms should be “dry-as-dust” and “slightest touch of fuzzyness” (Bhattacharyya, 1969). So, terminology research in Indian schools of thought has a rich history.

2.2 Conclusion

The observations derived from the literature review are presented below.

Section 2.1: It shows that the definition of the catalogue mainly based on document. So as the documents change over the time, many terms newly formed and old terms disappear.

Section 2.2: shows that cataloguing is still relevant even in this digital era. To manage effective information from millions of documents, catalogue has changed its form and nature, but not died.

Section 2.3: discusses the history of cataloguing research in general.

Section 2.4: has shown the documents related to the meaning and scope of terminology. Here it is revealed that terminology has two meanings – a set of terms with definitions on a particular subject field, another is the study of the terms (of a particular discipline) on a philosophical basis.

Section 2.5: established the importance of terminologies as a part of catalogue codes from their inception.

Section 2.6: discussed the evolution of different catalogue codes with the situations. Ranganathan once said that terminologies must change with the time. So different catalogue code of different times represent terms and definitions those were the demands of those times.

Section 2.7: shows the varieties of terminological researches done till date and the possibilities of further researches.

As evidenced by the existing literature, changes in cataloguing terms and definitions are inevitable. However, the review of the literature reveals that little research has been done on the evolution of catalogue terminologies as provided in various English catalogue codes, resulting in a considerable knowledge gap.

References

- American Library Association. (1908). *Catalogue rules: author and title entries*. Chicago: The Association
- American Library Association. (2019). *Core values of librarianship*. Retrieved from <https://www.ala.org/advocacy/intfreedom/corevalues>
- Bhattacharyya, G. (1969). *Cataloguing research in India*. Bangalore: DRTC.
- Bianchini, C., & Guerrini, M. (2009). From bibliographic models to cataloguing rules: Remarks on FRBR, ICP, ISBD, and RDA and the relationships between them. *Cataloging & Classification Quarterly*, 47(2), 105-124.
- Coyle, K. & Hillmann, D. (2007). Resource Description and Access (RDA): cataloguing rules for the 20th century. *D-lib magazine*. 13 (1-2).
- Creider, L.S. (2009). A comparison of the Paris principles and the International Cataloguing Principles. *Cataloguing & Classification Quarterly*. 47 (6), 583-599.
- Cutter, C.A. (1876). *Rules for a dictionary catalog (4th ed.)*. Washington, Government Print Office.
- Drake, M.A. (Ed.). (2003). *Encyclopedia of Library and Information Science* (2nd ed.). New York: Marcel Dekker.
- Gorman, M. (2000). *From card catalogues to WebPACs: Celebrating Cataloguing in the 20th Century*. Retrieved from http://www.loc.gov/catdir/bibcontrol/gorman_paper.html.

- Gorman, M. (2016). RDA: the emperor's new code. *JLIS.it*. 7 (2). Retrieved from <https://www.jlis.it/article/view/11565/10748>
- Harrod, L. M. (2000). *Harrod's librarians' glossary and reference book* (9th ed.). New York: Gower.
- International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (2009). *Functional Requirements of Bibliographic Records*. Retrieved 6 March, 2016, from <http://www.ifla.org/VII/s13/frbr/>
- Joint Steering Committee for Revision of AACR., & American Library Association. (2002). *Anglo-American cataloguing rules* (2nd rev. ed.). Canadian Library Association. Chicago: American Library Association.
- Kent, A., & Lancour, H. (Eds.). (1974). *Encyclopedia of library and information science*. New York: Marcel Dekker.
- Knowlton, S.A. (2009). Criticism of cataloguing code reform, as seen in the pages of Library resources and Technical Services (1957-66). *Library resources and Technical Services*. 53 (1). Retrieved from <https://journals.ala.org/index.php/lrts/article/view/5459/6697>
- Library of Congress. (2012). *FRBR practicum: Applying the concepts*. Retrieved 6 March, 2016, from www.loc.gov/.../FRBR...Practicum/FRBR_Module%202_Practicum.pdf.
- Needham, C. D. (1964). *Organizing knowledge in libraries*. London: Andre Deutsch.
- Prasad, K.N. (1983). *Development of terminology in the field of library classification with special reference to Indian school of thought: a case study* (Doctoral dissertation). Retrieved from <http://dspace.vidyanidhi.org.in:8080/dspace/handle/2009/4547>
- Ranganathan, S R. (1955a). *Heading and canons: comparative study of five catalogue codes*. Madras: S.Viswanathan.
- Ranganathan, S. R. (1955b). Standard for lay-out of catalogue code. *Annals of Library Science*. 2 (1). 28-32.

- Ranganathan, S.R. & Bhattacharyya, G. (1968). Cataloguing terminology. *Library Science with a slant to documentation*. 5 (3). 231-263.
- Scheele, M. (1961). *Punch-card methods in research and documentation*. New York: Intersciences Publisher.
- Sengupta, B. (1964). *Cataloguing: its theory and practice*. Kolkata: World Press.
- Tikku, U.K. (1983). Anglo-American cataloguing rules 1908-1978: a state of the art. *Annals of Library Science and Documentation*. 30(3-4), 151-165.
- Wakimoto, J.C. (2009). Scope of the library catalogue in times of transition. *Cataloguing & Classification Quarterly*. 47 (5). 409-426.
- Welsh, A & Batley, S. (2012). *Practical cataloguing: AACR,RDA and MARC 21*. London: Facet.

Chapter – 3

Terminology: Concept, Component and Evaluation with Special Reference to the Field of Library Cataloguing

Terminology is the systematic listing of concepts with definitions related to a particular field of study. According to Ranganathan, standard terminology is needed to eliminate faults to communicate ideas to others as well as self-communication in thinking (Ranganathan, 1989). In other words, it is a systematic study of labelling or designing or designation of concepts particular to one or more subject fields or

domains of human activity. An idea or phenomenon can be described with the use of proper terminology. Terminologies are broadly classified in to two categories as done by Wikipedia-Ad-hoc terminologies and systematic terminology. Ad-hoc terminologies deal with single terms and also restricted to small number of terms. We are mostly concerned with systematic terminologies that study the concepts relating to a particular field or domain (Wikipedia, 2011).

3.1 Importance of Terminological Studies in Cataloguing

Cataloguing deals with the description of documents. Catalogue codes are the manifestations of rules and examples of practical cataloguing according to some intrinsic philosophy. Like other ‘sciences’ a well-defined terminology is needed to communicate ideas as well as correct practice in the field of library cataloguing. Another important aspect of terminology in cataloguing is that it can compare two or more codes. Terminology should be “dry-as-dust and without the slightest touch of fuzziness” (Bhattacharyya, 1969).

Terminology is an essential component of any catalogue code. In Cutter Rules for Dictionary Catalogue (1876), we find terminologies. Dr. S.R. Ranganathan was one of the pioneers in the field. He tried to develop cataloguing terminologies according to some guidelines and canons. The results were published through CCC (1934), Headings and Canons (1955) and many others. In 1954, he guided a Ph.D. work done by K.D. Puranik (Bhattacharyya, 1969). Puranik compiled a complete glossary of cataloguing terms on the basis of all the authoritative works available at that time. According to Prasad terminology is a field where changes occurred very frequent and at the same time terminologies enrich the concerned fields of study to a better perspective (Prasad, 1982). Osborn has described four approaches of cataloguing-legalistic approach, perfectionist approach, bibliographic approach and pragmatic approach (Osborn, 1966). Among those, the first two approaches advocates for appropriate terminologies in cataloguing. Ghosh & Das (2012) has shown how terminologies in catalogue codes have changed time to time and they also proposed some probable causes behind this change. Several efforts have been done till date to establish proper terminologies like ISO 704:2000, Ranganathan & Bhattachatyya (1968), Prasad (1982), Scheele (1961), etc. If a standard to evaluate cataloguing terms

from different catalogue codes on the basis of these prime contributions is designed, it will be very significant for coining new terms in the future.

3.2 Scope

The purview of this chapter is the evaluation of catalogue terminologies of some selected catalogue codes according to the guidelines of some taken standards as stated below:

Documents for standardization – ISO 704: 2000, Ranganathan's Canon of Terminology, Scheele's Guidelines of Terminology

The 13 codes covered under study are listed below:

1. Rules for dictionary catalogue by C.A. Cutter, 1st edition, published in 1876, i.e., RDC 1 (1876)
2. Rules for a dictionary catalogue by C.A. Cutter, 4th edition published in 1904, i.e., RDC 4 (1904)
3. Cataloguing rules; author and title entries [AA code] published in 1908, i.e., AA (1908)
4. Classified Catalogue Code, 1st edition, published in 1934, i.e., CCC 1 (1934)
5. Classified Catalogue Code, 3rd edition, published in 1951 i.e., CCC 3 (1951)
6. Classified catalogue code with additional rules for dictionary catalogue code, 5th edition, published in 1964, i.e., CCC 5 (1964)
7. ALA cataloguing rules for author and title, published in 1949, i.e., ALA (1949)
8. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules (British Text), published in 1967, i.e., AACR 1 BT (1967)
9. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules (North American Text), published in 1967, i.e., AACR 1 NAT (1967)
10. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd edition, published in 1978, i.e., AACR 2 (1978)
11. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd revised edition, published in 1988, i.e., AACR 2R (1988)
12. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2003 update, i.e., AACR (2003)

13. Resource Description and Access, 2016 release, i.e., RDA (2016)

3.3 Standard Definition of Terminology

Terminology may be used in two senses. They are listed below.

1. **Sense1** – set of designations belonging to one special language arranged in a systematic manner, generally alphabetical (e.g., Author, Corporate body, Series, Periodical, etc. used in various catalogue codes).
2. **Sense2** – science studying the structure, formation, development, usage and management of terminologies in various subject fields (International Standard Organization, 2000a).

So in terminology, a concept having some unique combination of characteristics is designated by a designator in a specific natural language.

3.4 Component of Terminology

A terminology has two components – Designators and Definitions.

3.4.1 Designators

Designation means representation of a concept by a sign which denotes it.

Three types of designators are used for designation purpose-terms, appellations and symbols.

1. **Terms** – Terms mean verbal designation of a general concept in a specific subject field. A term may contain symbols and can have variants, e.g., different forms of spelling. e.g.- Main entry, Catalogue, Catalog, etc.
2. **Appellation** – Appellation denotes an individual object only, e.g. ICCP, ICC-IME, RDA, etc.
3. **Symbols**– Symbols are the notational representation of concept, e.g., © stands for copyright (International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 2000b).

3.4.2 Definitions

Definition means representation of a concept by a descriptive statement which serves to differentiate it from related concepts, e.g., **Subtitle** – A secondary or subordinate title usually explanatory, and forming part of the title (from CCC 5)

Definition are of two types-

1. **Intentional definition**– Definition which describes the intention of a concept by stating the super-ordinate concept and the delimiting characteristics, e.g., **Tell-tale title** – Title that discloses the subject of the work (taken from CCC 5).

Here the superordinate concept is Title.

2. **Extensional definition**– Description of a concept by enumerating all of its subordinate concepts under one criterion of subdivision, e.g. **Collaborator** – One who works with one or more associates to produce a work such as Joint author, Editor, Illustrator, etc. (taken from AACR 2, 1978).

3.5 Concept and Concept Relationship

Concepts are the basic elements of a terminology. A concept is a unit of knowledge with a unique combination of characteristics. Obviously, they are not limited to a particular language. A particular concept is designated by different terms in different languages. e.g. Catalogue (English), কালুগী (in Bengali).

Concept relationships represents the associations between two concepts. There are various types of relationships:

- i. **Genus-species relationship** – Two terms are genus-species to one another, e.g., Entry vs. Main entry
- ii. **Whole-part relationship** – One concept is part of another, e.g. Main entry vs. leading section (in CCC)
- iii. **Associative relationship** – Two concepts are related to each other, e.g., Cataloguing vs. Classification.

- iv. **Causal relationship** – One concept is the product of another, e.g., Cataloguing vs. Catalogue

3.6 Steps of Building Terminology

Building proper terminology generally follows a definite process as follows.

1. Collecting the concepts
2. Analyzing the concepts related to a field or domain of activity
3. Categorization of concepts with relationships.
4. Designating the terms assigned to the concepts with proper definition
5. Listing the terms in a systematic way
6. Revision of terminologies with a certain frequency

(Guiding Principles of Terminology Research, 2011)

3.7 Terms Used in a Terminology

Terms used in a terminology may be classified as follows:

- i. **Simple term** – It contains only one root, such as **Title**.
- ii. **Complex term** – Contain more than one root, such as Chief source of information.
- iii. **Borrowed term** – This term borrowed from another subject field by virtue of analogy, such as Organ of Corporate body (in CCC 5) borrowed from human physiology analogical with human body organs.
- iv. **Neoterm or neologisms** – New term coined for an existing concept, such as, Creator now being coined for Author. (International Standard Organization, 2000a)

3.8 Terminologization

It is the process by which a general language word or expression is transformed into a term, used in a terminology. Term formation in a particular language depend on the intrinsic characteristics of that particular language and its phonological structures. Let

us discuss some general instances of term formation, especially applicable to English language.

3.8.1 Creation of New Term with New Forms

A new term (never existed before) may be formed in the following ways:

3.8.1.1 Derivation

Here, new term forms by adding one or more morphological elements or affixes to a root or word.

Example – Co + education + al = co-educational

Convention + al name =Conventional name (AACR 2 1978)

3.8.1.2 Compounding

Here, two or more roots are combined to form a new single concept.

Example - Video-on-demand

Name-title added entry (from AACR 2 1978)

3.8.1.3 Abbreviations

Abbreviations may be formed by the following ways:

3.8.1.3.1 Short Forms

Here fewer words are used to designate a concept having a long name or complex term.

Example – Intergovernmental Group of Twenty-four on international Monetary affairs = Group of Twenty Four

Bibliographical description = Description (RDA 2016)

3.8.1.3.2 Clipped Form

Here, a simple term is truncated in front, middle or back portion.

Example – Influenza = flu

Kitte = Kit (AACR 2 1978)

Abbreviations – They are created by omitting words and/ or parts of a word.

Example – Etcetra = etc.

Etalii = et.al. (AACR 2R 1988)

3.8.1.3.3 Initialism

Here, the first letters of each word of a complex term is used. Initialism is always pronounced letter by letter.

Example - United Nations = U.N.

International Conference on Cataloging Principles = ICCP

3.8.1.3.4 Acronyms

These are created by combining initial letters or syllables from each or some of the elements of complex term or appellation. Acronyms are pronounced syllabically like a word.

Example – Disc Operating System = DOS

Online Public Access Catalogue = OPAC

3.8.2 Use of Existing Forms

Existing forms can be used to create new forms by any of the following ways:

3.8.2.1 Conversion

New terms can be created by changing grammatical function (syntactic category of existing forms).

Example - In Library science – catalogue (noun) to catalogue (verb), a catalogue (noun)

3.8.2.2 Terminologization

It is the process by which a natural language word is transformed in to a term designating a concept.

Example -

Entry-

the act or an instance of entering (into a place) (general English)

a record of an item in a catalogue (AACR 2R 2002 update)

3.8.2.3 Semantic Transfer

A term bears two meaning, one is concrete and another abstract, e.g.

Example-

Series

Concrete – A separately numbered sequence of volumes or issues within a series

Abstract – A group of separate resources related to one another by the fact each resource bears....individual resources may or may not be numbered (RDA 2016).

3.8.2.4 Transdisciplinary Borrowing

A term is borrowed from one subject field to another in the same language, comparing by analogy.

Example -

Catalogue (in retail) - a publication containing details of currently launched products.

Catalogue (in Library science) - A list of library materials contained in a library, arranged according to some definite plan. (AACR 2R 2002 Update)

3.9 Terminology vs. Lexicography

In the context of terminology, let we clear the concept of Lexicography. Though both the terms are synonymous to the common people, but they many distinguishing characteristics as shown below:

Table 3.1: Comparison between terminology and lexicography

Terminology	Lexicography
Encode concepts to terms	Decode terms to concept
Confined to specific domain of knowledge	Broader coverage

Define a concept precisely	Define all meanings of a term
Manifested by single or complex word-forms or phrases	Single words are mainly used
End product: terminology file	End product: dictionary

(Guiding Principles of Terminology Research, 2011)

3.10 Evaluation of Terminology

To evaluate a terminology, both the designators and definitions are to be taken into account.

3.10.1 Guiding Principles of Term Formation

To form a term, the following principles are to be followed:

3.10.1.1 Monosemy vs Polysemy

Obviously monosemy (one concept one term) is preferred for terminology, but it is also true that due to socioeconomic chaos many linguistic variants of a term occur very soon. This may be termed as polysemy (one term many concepts or one concept many terms). This situation can be overcome by designating the synonyms according to usage labels, as discussed below:

- sociolinguistic labels (the level of language of the term may be customary, scientific or jargon; the term may be standardized or officially approved)
- geographic labels (the term may be specific to a particular country or region)
- temporal labels (the term may be obsolete, archaic, or a neologism)
- origin labels (the term may be preferred by a given company or in a certain subject field for reasons of originality in commercial competition)
- frequency labels (the term may be used frequently, less frequently, or rarely) (Ghosh & Das, 2012).

3.10.1.2 Transparency

Terms should be transparent, i.e., the concept it designates should be inferred (at least

partially) without definition. For the purpose of transparency, the most intrinsic characteristic to be used in the creation of term itself.

Example – Chalk board is more transparent over Blackboard

Mixed responsibility is more transparent over Mixed authorship (AACR 2R 2002)

3.10.1.3 Consistency

Terms should be consistent at their creation as well as uses

Example – The concept of authorship should be designated as Personal author and Corporate author (not Corporate body) (CCC 5)

3.10.1.4 Appropriateness

Terms should be distinct, neutral as far as possible

Example – Added entries more appropriate than Secondary entry (because they are additional to Main entry)

3.10.1.5 Linguistic Economy

Terms should be as concise as possible.

Example – Composite book (CCC 5) is more concise than Collection with collective title - (AACR 2R). Both terms describe the same concept.

3.10.1.6 Derivability

Terms in terminology should be able to produce different derivatives as per linguistic conventions of the particular language.

Example - The term ‘Catalogue’ may have various derivatives like Cataloguer, cataloguing, catalogued, so this term is favoured in comparison to ‘inventory’ or ‘list’.

3.10.1.7 Concreteness

Concreteness, the degree to which language has a perceptible physical referent, and subjectivity, the extent to which linguistic meaning depends on the perspective of the speaker, are well established cognitive and linguistic notions. A term should be as concrete as possible (not abstract). People might find it more than normal that concrete concepts are easier to understand and learn than abstract concepts (Kwong, 2011). Crutch & Warrington (2005) stated advantages of concrete words over abstract words such as more direct sensory referents, supported by more semantic references, etc. and as a result more impact on human mind as recall is concerned. For example, 'Author' is more concrete than 'Creator'.

3.10.1.8 Native Language Preference

Though borrowing from other language is accepted form term creation, native language expressions should be preferred. Borrowed terms may be of two types – Foreign words - are slight changed or even totally remain unchanged. e.g. 'Kindergarden' in English (original kindergarten in German), 'Gherao' in English (original ঘেরাও in Bengali)

Loan words - which are adjusted with the structure of the new language. e.g. 'Catalogue' from Greek word 'Katalogos' (Packer, 2009).

Loan words may be considered as 'native words' of a particular language.

3.11 Defining the Concept

The quality of a terminology is determined by the quality of the definition. A definition describe a concept with a unique intension and extension. In scientific subjects like library cataloguing, definitions should be based on the treatment as done in authoritative sources. Definitions should be brief and to the point. Definition should start with the immediate genus of the concept, and then some specific delimiting features should occur. Delimiting feature may be intrinsic (such as nature, material or topic it concerned with) or extrinsic characteristics (such as function, manner of operation, origin, destination, etc.). A definition should have the following characteristics:

- Predictability – ability to insert the concept in concept system
- Simplicity – concise, clear and should be ended in one sentence
- Affirmativeness – should describe what the concept is rather what it is not
- Non-circularity – should not use words whose definitions refer back to the concept concerned
- Absence of tautology – rich semantic features should be described.

3.11.1 Component of a Definition

A standard definition has three components – Subject, copula and predicate.

Subject – Subject is the designator or the term itself

Copula – The verb “is”

Predicate-Predicate is the definition itself

3.11.2 Philosophy of Definition Writing

International Organization for Standardization (2000b) stated the key principles of definition writing as follows:

- **Conciseness** – Definitions should be brief but complex as necessary. Definitions should contain only pinpointed information that makes the concept unique. Additional information if any should be included in a note. A definition should not contain another hidden definition in it.

Example –Title analytical – specific added entry referring from the title of a contribution occurring in a host document, to its locus, i.e., the host document and the place of occurrence in it (CCC 5).

Here, the term locus is explained in the definition as the place of occurrence.

- **Subject field restriction** – Concept should be bound to a specific subject

field. If homonym occurs, the designator should be individualized, e.g.-
Adaptation (Music) (AACR 2 1978)

- **Non circularity** – When the designation is repeated to begin the definition or any part of the designation is used as a characteristic of definition, then the circularity occurs.

Example – Filmstrip cartridge – A cartridge containing a filmstrip (from RDA, 2013)

- **Preciseness** – Definition should be precise, not too broad, and not too narrow.

Example, Reprint– A new printing of an item made from the original type image, commonly by photographic methods. (Collected from AACR 2002 update)

(This definition similar to the definition of Reprography, so it not a precise one)

- **Positiveness** – A definition must be a positive one, not negative

Example: Added entry –Entry other than main entry (from CCC 5)

It is a negative entry because the concept of added entry is defined as the negative of that Main entry.

3.12 Terminology in Library Cataloguing

Ranganathan in his famous scientific method described terminology as *verbal apparatus* and mentioned its importance as “we should begin any discipline with the establishment of a special, agreed, dry-as-dust terminology without even the slightest touch of fuzziness” (Ranganathan, 1964). He also mentioned that cataloguing terminologies cannot be made once for all (Ranganathan, 1955). So, terminologies change time to time and should be changed as an evidence of the growth of the subject. Ghosh and Das (2012) has shown some instances of changes of terminology in the field of cataloguing as follows:

- Some terms are omitted due to their Irrelevancy in current times.

- New terms added due to emergence of new concepts.
- Classical concept definitions as well as designators remain unchanged.
- Neologisms are used for existing definitions.
- The definitions as well as the term both change to cope up the concept with new dimension.

Categorization of cataloguing terms– S.R. Ranganathan has categorized the cataloguing terms elaborately in CCC5 as follows:

- Work related terms – like, Thought, Adaptation, etc.
- Title related terms – like, Subtitle, Alternative title, etc.
- Author related terms – like, Author, Corporate body, etc.
- Collaborator related terms – like, Collaborator, Sponsors
- Document related terms – like, Document, Host document, etc.
- Preliminary pages related terms – like, Title page, Title leaf, etc.
- Series related terms – like, Series, Pseudo series, etc.
- Related documents – like, Extract, Separate, etc.
- Edition related terms
- Cataloguer's needs related terms – like, Format, Collation, etc.
- Catalogue related terms – like, Library catalogue, Union Catalogue, etc.
- Entry related terms – like, General entry, Specific entry, etc.
- Classified catalogue related terms – like, Class index entry, Book index entry, etc.
- Sections of entry related terms – like, Leading section, Heading section, etc.
- Heading related terms – like, Simple heading, Multiple heading, etc.
- Dictionary catalogue related terms – like, Dictionary catalogue, Subject analytical, etc.(Ranganathan,1964)

No other code has tried to classify the catalogue terms like this. This type of category resolution is unique and fits well to the Ranganathan's philosophy of deep level thinking.

3.13 Ranganathan's Canons of Terminology

Ranganathan stated some general canons' terminology which may be used as criteria in evaluating terms in any subject field –

- The term should have a unique meaning, homonym should be avoided.
- There should be consistency in the denotation of an idea in whatever combination it occurs; different terms should not be used to represent one and the same idea in different combinations.
- The terms for allied ideas should be cognate, but differentiated
- The intended idea should be represented and not any aberration from it.
- The idea should be denoted directly and not obliquely.
- The term is to be truly suggestive of the true function and not a mistaken one.
- The term should be suggestive of the true genesis of the idea denoted and not of any mistaken one (Ranganathan & Bhattacharyya, 1968).

Apart from these canons, another two canons of verbal plane (as mentioned to Prolegomena to Library Classification) may be stated in this context.

- i. i. Canon of Currency: The term used to denote a concept should be the one current among those specializing in the subject field.
- ii. ii. Canon of Reticence: The term used to denote an idea should not be critical- that it should not express any opinion of the terminology developer.

3.14 Scheele's Effort

Martin Scheele stated the guidelines for terminology construction which support philosophically the ideas of Ranganathan. According to him, terms should:

- Ensure unequivocal linguistic comprehension of the technical field.
- Synonym free
- Homonym free
- Not to be created newly for old and established ones
- Should be self-explanatory from the ordinary meaning of the words,

without need for closer definition. (Scheele,1961)

3.15 Comparative Study of the Canons of Ranganathan, Scheele and ISO704:2000

Ranganathan and Scheele's canon of terminology as well as the guidelines of ISO704:2000 – all discussed the preferable characteristics of terms in a standard form. A comparative study of these three is shown at the following table

Table 3.2: Comparison of the Canons of Ranganathan, Scheele and ISO 704:2000

Characteristics	Ranganathan	Scheele	ISO704:2000
Date of Publication	1949	1961	2000
Separately treated term and definition	NO	No	Yes
Free to homonym	Yes (1st)	Yes (3rd)	Yes
Free to Synonym	Yes (2nd)	Yes (2nd)	Yes
Self-explanatory	Yes (6th)	Yes (5th)	Yes (as transparency)
Linguistic Economy	(not clearly mentioned)	(not clearly mentioned)	Yes
appropriateness	Yes (4th)	(not clearly mentioned)	Yes (as appropriateness)
Derivability	Yes (3rd)	(not clearly mentioned)	Yes
Native Language Preference	(not clearly mentioned)	(not clearly mentioned)	Yes
Recognition of appellations	(not clearly mentioned)	(not clearly mentioned)	Yes
Currency	Yes	Yes (with some restrictions)	Yes

Terms without Criticism	Yes (Reticence)	(not clearly mentioned)	(not clearly mentioned)
----------------------------	--------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------

3.16 Term Evaluation Scale

As per the characteristics as stated in three authorized documents, discussed above, a scale designed for evaluation of cataloguing terms as well as their definitions in any language are as follows:

3.16.1 Characteristics of Term

From three standards as discussed above, evaluation criteria of a term are assigned as follows:

- Homonym free (Monosemy, i.e., One term, many concepts should be avoided)
- Synonym free (one concept many terms should be avoided)
- Transparency
- Consistency
- Concreteness
- Native language preference
- Linguistic economy

3.16.2 Characteristics of Definitions

Evaluation criteria of definitions are assigned as follows

- Conciseness
- Preciseness
- Positiveness
- Non circularity

3.17 Application of the Term Evaluation Scale: a case study for the term “Catalogue”

For testing the term evaluation scale, the term *Catalogue* has been taken as a sample. The definitions of the term are as follows, as taken from nine catalogue codes.

1. RDC 1904 – a list of books which is arranged on some definite plan. As distinguished from a bibliography, it is a list of books in some library or collection.
2. AA 1908 – A list of books, usually arranged according to some definite plan. As distinguished from a bibliography, it is a list of books in a library or collection.
3. ALA 1949 – a list of books, maps, etc., arranged according to some definite plans distinguished from a bibliography it is a list which records, describes, and indexes the resources of a collection, a library, or a group of libraries.
4. CCC 3 – a list of works, i.e. books and periodical publications in some library or collection, prepared on some definite plan.
5. CCC 5 (library catalogue) – list of the documents in a library or in a collection forming a portion of it.
6. AACR 1967 NAT – a list of books, maps, etc., arranged according to some definite plan. As distinguished from a bibliography, it is a list which records, describes and indexes the resources of a collection, a library or a group of libraries.
7. AACR 1967 BT – a list of books or other library materials content in a collection or a group of collections arranged according to some definite plans.
8. AACR2 1978 – i) a list of library materials contained in a collection, a library, or a group of libraries, arranged to some definite plans. ii) in a wider sense, a list of materials prepared for a particular purpose, e.g., an exhibition catalogue , a sales catalogue.
9. AACR 2R 2003 Update– i) a list of library materials contained in a collection, a library, or a group of libraries, arranged to some definite plans. ii) in a wider sense, a list of materials prepared for a particular purpose, (e.g., an exhibition catalogue, a sales catalogue.)

Now the characteristics of the term Term *Catalogue* has been measured and explained at the following table:

Table 3.3: Evaluation of the term Catalogue

Serial No.	Characteristic	Score	Remarks
1	Homonym freeness	1	Homonyms are individualized by (). Here is no such other terms Catalogue individualized by circular bracket
2	Synonym freeness	1	Because no synonymous term(s) for catalogue
3	Transparency	0.5	As the term is partially transparent because it means a list somehow, but list of library documents is not clear.
4	Consistency	NA	As, catalogue is not a subordinate term of another term.
5	Concreteness	0.5	as the concept is physically accessible but <i>list of books</i> concept is more concrete
6	Native language preference	1	As it is an English term though it's origin is the Greek term 'Katalogos'
7	Linguistic economy	1	because it is a single-worded term

The two definitions of the term *Catalogue* are evaluated and explained in following two tables:

Table 3.4: Definition evaluation of the term **Catalogue** in AACR2R 2002

Serial	Characteristic	Score	Remarks
--------	----------------	-------	---------

No.			
1	Conciseness	1	Definitions are brief but comprehensive
2	Preciseness	0.5	Designates two concepts at a time, so preciseness i.e. Accuracy or specificness is partial
3	Positiveness	1	No negativeness in the definition
4	Non circularity	1	

Table 3.5: Definition evaluation of the term ‘Catalogue’ in CCC 5 1965

Serial No.	Characteristic	Score	Remarks
1	Conciseness	0.5	Definition is brief but not comprehensive, no mention of arrangement function.
2	Preciseness	0.5	Too small, arrangement function is absent.
3	Positiveness	1	No negativeness
4	Non circularity	1	No repetition of defined term in the definition

So an 11 point (7 for term and 4 for definition) may be designed to measure the terminologies of catalogue codes.

3.18 Conclusion

Catalogue codes are the manifestations of rules and examples of practical cataloguing

according to some intrinsic philosophy. Like other 'sciences' a well-defined terminology is needed to communicate ideas as well as correct practice in the field of library cataloguing. Another important aspect of terminology in cataloguing is that it can compare two or more codes. Terminology should be "dry-as-dust and without the slightest touch of fuzziness" (Bhattacharyya, 1969). He also mentioned that terminology once created not to be existed forever. So, terminologies should be changed as per the development of the subject-field. Study of the chronological development of the terminology and evaluating them by a standard scale of measurement help us to follow the trends of a dynamic subject like cataloguing. A systematic study of evaluating the cataloguing terms may encourage better terminology in the future.

References

- Bhattacharyya, G. (1969). *Cataloguing research in India*. Bangalore: DRTC.
- Crutch, S.J., & Warrington, E.K. (2005). Abstract and concrete concepts have structurally different representational frameworks. *Brain*, 128, 615-627. doi:10.1093/brain/awh349
- Ghosh, A., & Das, A. (2012). Concept to term approach: a terminological study of catalogue codes. In *Trends and development in library and information science* (pp. 657-668). New Delhi: Zenith Publications. (Published as the proceedings of SAARC Conference for Library and Information Professionals, 2012)
- Guiding Principles of Terminology Research. (2011). Retrieved January 3, 2012, from <http://www.btb.termiumplus.gc.ca/didacticiel-tutorial/lecon-lesson-2/lecon-lesson-2-1-2-eng.html>
- International Organization for Standardization (ISO). (2000a). ISO 1087-1:2000, Terminology work — Vocabulary-Theory and application. Geneva: The Organization.
- International Organization for Standardization (ISO). (2000b). ISO 704:2000, Terminology work — Principles and methods. Geneva: The Organization.

- Kwong, O. (2011). *Measuring Concept Concreteness from the Lexicographic Perspective*. Retrieved August 6, 2017, from <https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/9c05/a95f69d50c6e08500a587b6baa71c0c7a8b1.pdf>.
- Packeiser, K. (2009). *The general theory of terminology: a literature review and a critical discussion* (Master thesis, Copenhagen Business School). Retrieved from https://studenttheses.cbs.dk/bitstream/handle/10417/655/kirsten_packeiser.pdf?sequence=1
- Principles of Terminology Research. (2007). Retrieved January 3, 2012, from <http://www.btb.gc.ca/btb.php?lang=eng&cont=697>
- Ranganathan, S.R. (1964). *Classified catalogue code with additional rules for dictionary catalogue code* (5th ed.). New Delhi: Asia Publishing House.
- Ranganathan, S.R. (1989). *Prolegomena to library classification* (3rd Ed.). New Delhi: Asia Books.
- Ranganathan, S.R. & Bhattacharyya, G. (1968). *Cataloguing terminology*. *Lib sc.* 5 (3).
- Scheele, M. (1961). *Punch-card methods in research and documentation*. New York: Interscience P
- Terminology. Wikipedia. Retrieved October 10, 2010, from <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Terminology>

Chapter – 4

Catalogue Codes and their Terminologies

Catalogue codes are the guidelines for practical cataloguing. All the codes used technical terms in their glossaries to make the practice more distinct and convenient to the users. In this chapter, an attempt had been made to examine the occurrences of cataloguing terms in 13 catalogue codes, starting from 1876 to 2016. Terms are classified into nine broad groups like Author related terms, Catalogue related terms, Entry related terms, etc. From sec 4.1 to 4.9, it has been tried to determine the occurrences of terms under each category. In sec. 4.10, the unused terms which are connected by ‘see’ references in the codes are discussed along with their preferred counterparts. The probable causes of their non-preferences are also discussed. In sec. 4.11, homonyms found in the cataloguing codes are discussed. This chapter aims to give an idea about how the terms have occurred in different codes in different period of time.

A comparative study was undertaken using the 13 catalogue codes listed below, which have been listed chronologically:

1. Rules for dictionary catalogue by C.A. Cutter, 1st edition, published in 1876, i.e., RDC 1 (1876)
2. Rules for a dictionary catalogue by C.A. Cutter, 4th edition published in 1904, i.e., RDC 4 (1904)
3. Cataloguing rules; author and title entries [AA code] published in 1908, i.e., AA (1908)
4. Classified Catalogue Code, 1st edition, published in 1934, i.e., CCC 1 (1934)
5. Classified Catalogue Code, 3rd edition, published in 1951 i.e., CCC 3 (1951)
6. Classified catalogue code with additional rules for dictionary catalogue code, 5th edition, published in 1964, i.e., CCC 5 (1964)
7. ALA cataloguing rules for author and title, published in 1949, i.e., ALA (1949)
8. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules (British Text), published in 1967, i.e., AACR 1 BT (1967)
9. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules (North American Text), published in 1967, i.e., AACR 1 NAT (1967)
10. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd edition, published in 1978, i.e., AACR 2 (1978)
11. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd revised edition, published in 1988, i.e., AACR 2R (1988)
12. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2003 update, i.e., AACR (2003)
13. Resource Description and Access, 2016 release, i.e., RDA (2016)

4.1 Author Related Terms

The terms related to the authority or responsibility of a work may be classified as follows:

4.1.1 Terms Related to the Authority

In general sense, author is person(s) or corporate body(s) responsible for the thought content embodied in the document in various catalogue codes. The meaning of author is the responsibility of creation of document. The responsibilities may be shared among different authors, or responsibility may be mixed up among several authors. Author related terms are manifested in different sense:

4.1.1.1 Aggregator

These are related to aggregation of artefacts for exhibition purpose. Related term- Curator and Collector. Here the responsibility of these two concepts is not to create a document, but to collect and exhibit the document. Both the terms occur in RDC 2016. The term Collector also used in RDC 4 (1904) as replacement of Editor. These two terms have established the changing trend of 'authorship', i.e., not only creating but also curating for a particular purpose.

4.1.1.2 Collaborator

These terms are related to collaboration with another creators to make the text more understandable. Related terms – Illuminator, Illustrator and Collaborator. Collaborator is the most popular term in this group. Illustrator and Illuminator were known in catalogue field but not defined formally before RDC (i.e., Code13).

4.1.1.3 Collaborative Creation

It is a process of creation of a document jointly. Two terms are available in this group- Shared responsibility and Mixed responsibility. This concept is recognized in AACR family of codes. These two terms establish the fact that modern documents are not created generally by a single author, rather they are emerged by the collaborative efforts of more persons or corporate bodies.

4.1.1.4 Communicator

These terms are related to those who communicate some ideas (either their own or that of others) to others. Four terms are found in this group- Broadcaster, Instructor, Narrator and Speaker. The ideas are old, but not formally defined before RDA. In old concepts authorship means writing or editing a document but conveying something verbally is recognized as a 'creation' in modern scenario and accordingly these terms

are included in RDA glossary.

4.1.1.5 Compilation

These terms are related to selecting, collecting and recording of information created by others. Here no such intellectual effort is involved. Two terms Collector and Compiler are found under this category. Compilation idea is present in all the codes. The term Collector is used in two point of views – In RDA it is used as aggregation of any kind of items – texts or artefacts, and in RDC 1904 it is used in compilation of texts items only. This change in the scope of the term is due to the fact of changing environment of documents as well as the library.

4.1.1.6 Compilation and Creation

These terms are related to the collection, selection, correction of texts (as and when necessary) and arrangement of documents created by others. Intellectual activities are involved in these jobs. Related terms are Editor and Joint editor.

4.1.1.7 Corporate Creator

The institutions and other corporate bodies are assigned as ‘Authors’, because of their involvement behind a work. The recognition of Corporate authors was first assigned by ‘British Museum Code’ in 1841, but the term was first defined by S R Ranganathan in his classified catalogue code (1934). Most of the codes (9 under the study) included the term corporate body in their terminology. This establishes the fact that many corporate bodies are now considered responsible for creating documents. Ranganathan in his classified catalogue code (1965) classified the corporate bodies as Government, Institution and Conference. This classification was also followed by the later codes like AACR.

4.1.1.8 Creator

Creator related terms have the scope of defining concepts of personal responsibilities. Though ‘Author’ is the most known term in this category, but ‘Joint author’ occurs the maximum time. The terms Composer, Cartographer, are also recognized as ‘author’. ALA 1949 is the pioneer of considering ‘composer’ of music as ‘Author’ analogical to the conventional personal author. Ranganathan in CCC 1 assigned the concept more

precisely by the term ‘Personal author’ and various other code also follow it. Other varieties of author, like Librettist, etc. establish the increment of the scope of authorship in various types of document beyond the conventional printed books. The term Joint author is mostly defined by most of the catalogue codes rather than ‘Author’ the logic behind this fact that the preview of author may be put under that of Joint author. The term Pseudonymous author has been used by CCC 5 (1965) and thus giving emphasis on pseudonyms once again.

4.1.1.9 Interpreter

The interpretation means saying of others thinking in more understandable way. The term Commentator is related to such activities for a long past, but it is used only in RDA. As RDA glossary is most generalized, and it has tried to cover almost all the concepts relating to cataloguing. So ‘commentator’ is included in this list.

4.1.1.10 Legal Possessor

The term owner is not directly involved in the thought content of a document but he or she is the custodian of the document, his responsibility is to keep the document safe for the legal use. This type of responsibility is recognized as the safety/ durability of a document, both physically and intellectually.

4.1.1.11 Rebuilding the Text with Unchanged Theme

Adaption of documents is a very popular idea. From a long past, the term Abridger and Arranger are related to this concept. One for text and another for musical notes. AACR codes recognized the idea of abridgement at their various editions like 1988, 2002 etc. But the term Abridger fast used in RDA glossary – the latter being more generalized and comprehensive in defining the term.

4.1.1.12 Transferring Original Text into another Language

This concept is related to convert the ideas of a text from one language to another. The person or corporate body engaged in this work is not responsible for creation of thought content, but he or she is responsible for keeping the meaning intact as the original work. So the role of ‘Translator’ is very important in the cataloguing world and the term well organized in various catalogue codes. The occurrences of Author

related terms in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.1: Occurrences of author related terms and their categorizations

Term	Code Number	Role
Collector	13,2	Aggregation of objects
Curator	13	Aggregation of objects
Collaborator	12, 11, 10, 7, 6	Collaboration
Illuminator	13	Collaboration
Illustrator	13	Collaboration
Mixed Responsibility	12, 11, 10	Collaborative creation
Shared Responsibility	12, 11, 10	Collaborative creation
Broadcaster	13	Communicator
Instructor	13	Communicator
Narrator	13	communicator
Speaker	13	Communicator
Collector	2	Compilation
Compiler	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3	Compilation
Editor	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 6, 5, 4, 3	Compilation and creation
Joint Editors	6, 4	Compilation and creation
Conference	13, 12, 11, 10, 7	Corporate creator
Corporate Author	7, 6, 4	Corporate creator
Corporate Body	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 4	Corporate creator
Government	13, 7	Corporate creator
Institution	7	Corporate creator
Related Body	12	Corporate creator
Joint Author	12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3	Creation
Animator	13	Creator
Annotator	13	Creator
Author	13, 9, 8, 5, 3, 2, 1	Creator

Cartographer	13	Creator
Choreographer	13	Creator
Composer	13, 9, 8, 5	Creator
Contributor	13, 7	Creator
Creator	13	Creator
Librettist	5	Creator
Personal Author	12, 11, 10, 7, 6, 4	Creator
Pseudonymous Author	7	Creator
Commentator	13	Interpreter
Owner	13	Legal possessor
abridger	13	Rebuilding the text with unchanged theme
Arranger	9, 8	Rebuilding the text with unchanged theme
translator	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 5	Transferring original text into another language

4.2 Catalogue Related Terms

Catalogue is a basic concept of cataloguing as well as library science. Generally, a catalogue is defined as a list of library documents arranged in a systematic manner. Almost all the catalogue codes defined the term catalogue itself. There are also other terms related to cataloguing or catalogue which describes the forms of the catalogue like Inner form, outer form etc. The board categories of catalogue related terms are described below.

4.2.1 Terms Based on Inner Forms

Inner form indicates the nature of arrangement of catalogue entries. There are nine

terms under this category found in various catalogue codes from 1876 to 2016. The term 'Dictionary Catalogue' occurs maximum times, starting from 1876 (RDC 1876) to 1967 (AACR NAT 1967), thus this concept found very popular up to AACR 2 1st edition but from AACR 2 2nd edition onward this term was not found. The introduction of computers in library cataloguing may be a probable cause behind the obsolescence of this term because in computer form of catalogue does not bother the content of access point – whether it is an alphabet or it is numeric value.

The term 'classified catalogue' occurs once only in CCC 5 (1965). It is to be noted that the terminology of classified catalogue codes CCC 5 (1965) have included the term 'dictionary catalogue' but the terminology of the dictionary catalogue codes under the study (i.e., RDCs and AACRs) not included the term classified catalogue codes. The probable cause behind this fact may be that dictionary catalogue is unipartite and there is no provision for classified part, i.e., arrangement according to call numbers, but the classified part is bipartite and there is a provision of dictionary part (i.e., the index entries of a classified catalogue). The terms like classed catalogue, 'Alphabetic subject catalogue', 'Alphabetic Classed Catalogue', etc. occur in various dictionary catalogue codes like RDC 1876 and RDC 1904 which are manifestation of subject entries in alphabetic forms, the occurrence ensure that divisor of this catalogue codes were very much aware about the necessity of subject catalogues in various dictionary cataloguing environment.

4.2.2 Term Based on Outer Form

One term 'Card Catalogue' has been found on the outer form of the cataloguing. It occurs in Code 2 (RDC 4 1904) this maiden occurrence of this term indicates that catalogue codes do not give so much importance on outer forms rather they are interested in the inner forms.

4.2.3 Generic Term

Four generic terms 'Catalogue', 'Catalogue (works)', 'Library catalogue', 'Catalogue (of books)' have been found under the catalogue codes of this research study. If noted carefully, there is one concept 'Catalogue' but the terminological manifestation are different in different codes. The term 'Catalogue' is used in most of the codes, but the

first approach of specifying the catalogue in library field was done by (AA 1908) by individualising it with the phrase ‘of books’. Similar attempt was made by Dr. Ranganathan in CCC 5 (1965) by using the term ‘library catalogue’ which is more specific than ‘Catalogue’, though in CCC 1 (1934) and CCC 3 (1951) used the term ‘Catalogue’. The latest code ‘RDA’ also used the term catalogue but with an individualising element ‘work’ where work is an ‘FRBR’ element. So the term catalogue have been found the most appreciated in various catalogue codes.

4.2.4 Cooperation Related Terms

The concept of cooperative cataloguing first terminologised by none other than Dr. Ranganathan in the 1960s. In the 5th edition of CCC (1965) the term union catalogue was used and defined. After 1965 the other codes have mentioned the concept of union catalogue, but they do not include the term in their terminology.

4.2.5 Inner Form by Subject

The subject approaches in dictionary catalogue like RDCs and AACRs were manifested by alphabetico classed catalogue, alphabetic subject catalogue etc. ALA 1949 approached it differently by using the term thematic catalogue. The term related to the themes (rather than subject). It is to be noted that the terminology of ALA 1949 not includes any other term related to the subject cataloguing. The occurrences of Catalogue related terms in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.2: Occurrences of Catalogue related terms and their categorisations

Term	Code number	Type
Alphabetic Subject Catalogue	2	Based on Inner form
Alphabetico Classed Catalogue	2	Based on Inner form
Author Catalogue	2	Based on inner form
Card Catalogue	2	Based on outer form
Catalogue	12, 11, 9, 8, 6, 5, 4, 2	Generic term
Catalogue (Work)	13	Generic term

Catalogue (of Books)	3	Generic term
Classed Catalogue	1	Based on Inner form
Classified Catalogue	7	Based on Inner form
Dictionary Catalogue	9, 8, 7, 5, 2, 1	Based on Inner form
Library Catalogue	7	Generic term
Name Catalogue	2	Based on Inner form
Personal Catalogue	2	Based on inner form
Thematic Catalogue	5	Based on Inner form by subject
Union Catalogue	7	Based on cooperation

4.3 Document Related Terms

Documents are those from which information in any form can be available. The document related terms as found in the catalogue codes under the study may be divided as:

4.3.1 3D Artefacts

There are 6 terms related to this type of documents as shown in the following table. All the terms occur during the year 1978 to 2016, i.e., last part of 20th century. So, the concept cataloguing these types of documents emerged during this period. On other words, libraries recognised these documents as library materials in this period and also felt to catalogue them for the access of the users. The occurrences of Document related terms-subclass *3D artefacts* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table-4.3: Occurrences of document related terms: 3D artefacts

Term	Code Number	Type
Model	12, 11, 10	3D artefact
Artefact	12, 11, 10	3D artefact
Object	13, 12, 11, 10	3D artefact

Art Original	12, 11, 10	3D artefacts
Diorama	13, 12, 11, 10	3D artefacts
Game	13	3D artefacts

4.3.2 Cartographic Materials

There are 9 terms in this category. Atlas is the earliest term occurring since 1949 i.e., ALA 1949. The term last occurs in RDA 2016. So the concept is still relevant as a document. The terms Globe, Map, Chart occur during AACR period, i.e., in between 1978 and 2002 and also in current times they are being used. Terms like cartographic moving image, Cartographic tactile image and Cartographic image occur in RDA 2016 and these terms are very generic in nature. It supports the generalization principle of RDA. The occurrences of Document related terms subclass *Cartography* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.4: Occurrences of document related terms: Cartographic materials

Term	Code number	Type
Cartographic Moving Image	13	Cartographic materials
Cartographic Tactile Image	13	Cartographic materials
Chart	13, 12, 11, 10	Cartographic materials/ Graphic
Atlas	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 5	Cartographic materials
Cartographic Image	13	Cartographic materials
Chart (Cartography)	12	Cartographic materials
Globe	13, 12, 11, 10	Cartographic materials
Map	13, 12, 11, 10	Cartographic materials
Plan	12, 11	Cartographic materials

4.3.3 Continuing Resources

The terms continuing resources itself changed from serials as last used in AACR 1988 revised edition. But the terms under these categories are being occurred since 1904

(Code2 RDC, 4th ed.). The term serial is still being used. Ranganathan used the term Periodical publication, which is clearer than Periodical. Ranganathan used the term Reviewing periodical in CCC 5 in the year 1965 which indicates that he recognized the idea of secondary periodicals separately from the general periodicals. As Serials and Periodicals are different in nature, these two concepts are being defined separately from the very beginning, i.e., from the age of RDC 1904. The occurrences of Document related terms-subclass *Continuing resources* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.5: Occurrences of Document related terms: Continuing resources

Term	Code Number	Type
Periodical Publication	6, 4	Continuing resources
Reviewing Periodical	7	Continuing resources
Serial	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2	Continuing resources
Periodical	9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2	Continuing resources

4.3.4 Electronic Resources

The terms first used in this category are Multimedia item, multifile item and multimedia item which are used in AACR 1978, i.e., at the time of emerging digital computers. It is to be noted that electronic documents became very popular as the related terms soon included at the terminology sections of catalogue codes. Terms like Online resource, Digital resource used in RDC 2016 (Code 13) may be said as an effort of including all computer-driven documents under a single umbrella. This is also a generalization. The occurrences of document related to electronic resources is shown in the following table:

Table 4.6: Occurrences of Document related terms: Electronic resources

Term	Code Number	Type
Multimedia Item	12, 11, 10	Electronic resource
Online Resource	13	Electronic resource

Digital Resource	13	Electronic resources
Electronic Flash Card	13	Electronic resources
Multi Part File	11, 10	Electronic resources
Multifile Item	10	Electronic resources

4.3.5 Generic Terms

Most of the Generic terms are used as GMDs in AACR 2R and further editions. The first terms used under this category are Document and macro document, as used in CCC 5 (1965). The important feature of these terms is that they represent the form of a document rather than a particular document. Two terms-source of information and resource are too generic in nature as expected for the case of RDA. The occurrences of Document related terms-subclass *Generic terms* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.7: Occurrences of Document related terms: Generic terms

Term	Code Number	Type
Cartographic Material	12, 11, 10	Generic term
Document	7	Generic term
Electronic Resource	12	Generic term
Graphic	12, 11, 10	Generic term
Kit	12, 11, 10	Generic term
Macro Document	7	Generic term
Macro Form	12, 11, 10, 9, 8	Generic term
Manuscript	12, 11, 10, 9, 8	Generic term
Micro Document	7	Generic term
Microform	13, 12, 11, 10	Generic term
Motion Picture	12, 11, 10	Generic term
Overhead Transparency	13	Generic term
Realia	12, 11, 10	Generic term
Resource	13	Generic term
Sound Recording	12, 11, 10	Generic term
Source Of Information	13	Generic term

Technical Drawing	13, 12, 11, 10	Generic term
Text	13, 12, 11, 10	Generic term
Transparency	12, 11, 10	Generic term
Video recording	12, 11, 10	Generic term

4.3.6 Graphic Materials

Graphic materials are being used from the beginning period of library catalogue. 'Frontispiece', 'Illustrations' and 'Plate' first used in AA 1908. The terms plate is still being used, as it occurs last in RDA 2016. Most of the terms under this category occur from 1978 to the modern period of RDA. Ranganathan used the term Reprograph as a product of the process reprography. It is a unique term, but used only once. 'Frontispiece' though a common concept but defined in one code only. 'Photograph', 'picture' are very generalised term but defined in several codes. The occurrences of Document related terms-subclass *Graphic materials* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table-4.8: Occurrences of Document related terms: Graphic materials

Term	Code Number	Type
Art print	12, 11, 10	Graphic materials
Art reproduction	12, 11, 10	Graphic materials
Flash Card	13, 12, 11, 10	Graphic materials
Frontispiece	3	Graphic materials
illumination	13	Graphic materials
Illustrations	3	Graphic materials
photograph	13	Graphic materials
Picture	13, 12, 11	Graphic materials
Plate	13, 12, 11, 10, 8, 3	Graphic materials
Print	13	Graphic materials
Radiograph	13, 12, 11, 10	Graphic materials
Reprograph	7	Graphic materials

4.3.7 Microforms

Microforms related terms include 4 items. The concepts of micro as well as macro documents were used by S.R. Ranganathan in CCC 5. AACR codes used the specific types of micro documents like Micro reproduction, Microfiche, Microfilm, etc. The concepts are very old, but included first at the AACR 1967 terminology portion. It indicates the use of micro documents started from this period and they are still relevant as RDA 2016 also used the terms. The occurrences of Document related terms-subclass *Microforms* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.9: Occurrences of document related terms: Microforms

Term	Code Number	Type
Micro reproduction	9, 8	Microforms
Microfiche	13, 12, 11, 10	Microforms
Microfilm	13, 12, 11, 10	Microforms
Microopaque	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8	Microforms

4.3.8 Motion Picture

Motion picture is a generic term first defined in the glossary of AACR 1978. The terms Film strip and trailer used in AACR codes as separate document. But surprisingly, RDA though used the phrase motion picture in many definitions, but it does not define the term Motion picture itself. Probably, RDA recognised the previous definitions and decided not to include any new parameters in the definition. The occurrences of Document related terms-subclass *Motion picture* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.10: Occurrences of document related terms: Motion picture

Term	Code Number	Type
Film Strip	12, 11, 10	Motion picture
Trailer	12, 11	Motion picture

4.3.9 Multiple Form

These types of documents may be manifest in different forms like textual, graphical, audio, video, graphic etc. The term Work first used in CCC 1 (1934) as a generic term and RDA also used the terms in same denotation according to FRBR model. The term ‘Facsimile reproduction’ is being used from ALA 1949 to AACR 2002 update. In RDA, the terms changed as *Facsimile*. The latter term is free from redundancy, as Facsimile means a reproduction process from the original. The occurrences of Document related terms-subclass *Multiple form* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.11: Occurrences of document related terms: Multiple formats

Term	Code Number	Type
Expression	13	Multiple form
Facsimile	13	Multiple form
Facsimile Reproduction	12, 11, 10, 5	Multiple form
Imitated As (Work)	13	Multiple form
Item	13, 12, 11, 10	Multiple form
Iteration	13	Multiple form
Manifestation	13	Multiple form
Reproduction	13	Multiple form
Work	13, 7, 6, 4	Multiple form
Part	13, 12, 11, 10	Multiple form (textual, Electronic resources)
Accompanying Material	12, 11	Multiple form (Textual, 3D artefact, Electronic resources)
Photo Copy	12, 9, 8	Multiple form (textual, graphic)
Conventional Document	7	Multiple form (Textual/ continuing resources/ Musical, etc.)
Parody of (Work)	13	Multiple forms (Text, musical)

4.3.10 Musical Documents

Musical documents are not very old as catalogue items. The statement is proved by the fact that the terms like score, Arrangement(music), Part(music),Vocal score, etc. are being used from code no. 10 i.e. from AACR 1978 onwards. The term arrangement (music) is changed into Arrangement in RDA 2016.Probable fact behind this may be the popularization of the term in musical field so that it need not to be further individualisation. The proliferation of musical terms is going on as a result new 6 terms are introduced in RDA glossary like Cadenza, Choreography, libretto, etc. The occurrences of Document related terms-subclass *Musical documents* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.12: Occurrences of Document related terms: Musical

Term	Code number	Type
Adoption (music)	12, 11, 10	Musical
arrangement	13	Musical
Arrangement (music)	12, 11, 10	Musical
cadenza (work)	13	Musical
choreography (work)	13	Musical
chorus score	13, 12, 11, 10	Musical
close score	13, 12, 11, 10	Musical
Condensed Score	13, 12, 11	Musical
Full Score	13	Musical
libretto (work)	13	Musical
Miniature score	12, 11	Musical
Part (music)	12, 11, 10	Musical
Reduced score	13	Musical
score	13, 12, 11, 10	Musical
short score	13,12	Musical
study score	13	Musical
Vocal score	12,10	Musical

4.3.11 Sound Recordings and Braille

In this type of document on three specific terms are found. In CCC 5 Ranganathan has used the term speaking book which is a particular type of vocal expression of a printed book. AACR 1967 used the more generic term Phonorecord. But, in further codes no such terms are available. Proliferation of AV material over sound recordings may be a cause behind this. The occurrences of Document related terms-subclass *Sound recordings and Braille* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.13: Occurrences of Document related terms: Sound recordings and Braille

Term	Code number	Type
audio description	13	Sound recordings
Phonorecord	9, 8	Sound recordings
Speaking book	7	Sound recordings
tactile text	13	Braille

4.3.12 Textual Documents

There are 59 terms in this category. The term volume occurs in all the codes, under this study. Textual document content some meaningful texts in any form generally printed. Initially at code no.1, i.e. RDC1876 the terms volume was used as an individual book or a set of multivolume books. CCC used the term as a set of papers or other materials. RDA used the most generalised statement as career of one or more sheets containing information. So the time progresses the term exists but connotation changes.

Some terms like Artificial Composite book, Article, Abstracting periodicals, Classic, Contribution, Documentation lists, etc. are used in CCCs only. The term **Classic** is a unique term for old but evergreen documents and only used in CCC5. These terms are the product of unique thinking of Ranganathan. It is noticeable that terms used in CCCs are not used in other codes (except the term Volume). ALA1949 (code no. 5) used the terms Festschrift, and Excerpt which were not used by other catalogue codes. Though other codes after 1949 described the rules for cataloguing these types of documents. It may be supposed that as these terms are commonly used either in

English language dictionaries or in previous code (here ALA949) so the further codes do not feel it necessary to define these terms. The terms, **Dissertation**, **Academic** and **Programmed dissertation** were used in AA908 and ALA 1949 only. The term **Adaptation** were used in CCC and RDA 2016 (code 7 and 13 respectively). But the definition of CCC is much more accurate than that of RDA. Terms **prequel** and **sequel** are related to each other closely but they are not defined simultaneously in the same codes. Sequels are very commonly used concepts but prequels are not so common in document world. AACR editions 1978, 1988 and 2002 have similarities in inclusion of various terms like Broad side, Collection, Chief source of information, Continuation, etc. The terms series, Monograph series and Publisher's series are defined as documents in various catalogue codes. Among these three terms, series is the most popular and occurred in 11 catalogue codes. But Monograph series and Publisher's series are two terms only used in ALA 1949(code no. 5) but they are omitted by latter codes. They are actually merged under the concept of Series. . The occurrences of Document related terms-subclass *Textual documents* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.14: Occurrences of Document related terms: Textual

Term	Code number	Type
adaptation	13, 7	Textual
abridgement	7	Textual
Abstracting periodicals	7	Textual
Ana	6, 4	Textual
Appended	2	Textual
article	7	Textual
Artificial composite book	7, 6, 4	Textual
Book	7, 6, 4	Textual
Broad side	12, 11, 10	Textual
Chief source of information	12, 11, 10	Textual
Classic	7	Textual
Collection	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 5, 3	Textual
Composite book	7, 6, 4	Textual
Composite work	9, 8, 5	Textual

concordance (work)	13	Textual
continuation	12, 11, 10, 9, 5, 3	Textual
continuation of (work)	13	Textual
Contribution	7	Textual
correspondence	13	Textual
derivative (work)	13	Textual
Dissertation, academic	5, 3	Textual
Documentation list	7	Textual
Embodied thought	7	Textual
Excerpt	5	Textual
extract	7, 6	Textual
Fascicle	12, 11, 10	Textual
Festschrift	5	Textual
guide (work)	13	Textual
Host document	7	Textual
Impression	12, 11, 10	Textual
Incunabula	7	Textual
Indexing periodical	7	Textual
issue	13, 12, 11, 10	Textual
Linguistic bibliography	7	Textual
Macro bibliography	7	Textual
Merger Book	7	Textual
Micro Bibliography	7	Textual
Miniature Book	9	Textual
Monograph	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 5	Textual
Monograph series	5	Textual
Multi Volume book	7	Textual
Multipart item	12, 11	Textual
Multipart Monograph	13	Textual
Off print	6, 4	Textual
Ordinary composite book	7, 6, 4	Textual
prequel	13	Textual

Programme dissertation	3	Textual
Publisher's series	5	Textual
reference source	13, 12, 11	Textual
Reprint	12, 11, 10, 3	Textual
Sacred Work	7	Textual
section	13, 12	Textual
Section (serials)	11,10	Textual
Separate	7	Textual
Sequel	12, 11, 10	Textual
Series	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3	Textual
Simple book	7, 6, 4	Textual
special issue	13	Textual
Supplement	12, 11, 10	Textual
supplement (work)	13	Textual
thematic index	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8	Textual
volume	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1	Textual

So where documents related terms are concerned, most of the document related terms as found in the study are related to textual documents. There are also some types of documents, where very little number of terms has been found. For example, motion picture where only two terms have been found.

4.4 Edition Related Terms

Ranganathan described Edition in two senses in CCC 5.

In sense 1, “edition means one of the different printing or reproductions of a document with or without slight change in the thought content”. Here, change of contents matter. E.g., 2nd ed., New ed., Revised ed., etc.

In sense 2, one of the different forms in which one and the same work is published, each form having a distinctive name, e.g., Variorum edition.

In general, edition means a new version of a document with some additions and/or alteration. There are some edition related terms as found in study are discussed below:

4.4.1 Edition

The term ‘edition’ itself occurs 7 times in 7 codes under the study. Almost all cases the term is defined as sense 1 as stated by Ranganathan.

AACR codes used the term ‘Edition’ with some speciators like ‘electronic resource’, ‘unpublished item’, ‘computer files’, etc. The changes in the nature of documents have changed the purview of the concept ‘edition’ and hence the term ‘Edition’ has been more specified with the nature of the document.

4.4.2 Facsimile Edition

The term ‘Facsimile edition’ as used in AACR 1967 editions (both BT and NAT) is a reproduced form of an original. This indicates the popularity of replica documents at that period of times.

4.4.3 Title Edition

The term ‘title edition’ used only once in RDC 1904. It was based on the only change in the title and in modern times this concept is also relevant.

Surprisingly, the latest code RDA not defined the term ‘edition’, but used the phrase ‘edition’ in different definitions. Probably the concept is comprehensively established in previous codes and RDA considered no new facets to define edition in a different way. The occurrences of Edition related terms in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.15: Occurrences of edition related terms and their categorisations

Term	Code Number	Type
Edition	10, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2	Generic term
Edition: Electronic Resource	12	Edition related to particular type of document

Edition: Other Material	12, 11	Edition related to particular type of document
Edition: Unpublished Item	12, 11	Edition related to particular type of document
Edition: Computer Files	11	Edition related to particular type of document
Edition: Book, Pamphlets, Single Sheet, etc.	12	Edition related to particular type of document
Facsimile Edition	9, 8	Edition related to specific form
Title Edition	2	Change in title and/or date

4.5 Entry Related Terms

Ranganathan in his Classified Catalogue Code, 5th ed., 1965 has classified entries into various types like Call number entry, Join author entry, Translator entry, series entry, etc. But all these entries may be broadly subdivided as word entry and number entry, as suggested also by him according to the nature of the leading section or access point of the entries. Here the entry related terms have been classified into four broad categories-Generic terms, Word entry (WE) related terms and Number entry (NE) related terms and Word entry as well as Number entry related terms.

4.5.1 Generic Terms

There are five terms in this category. The most used term in Entry which is defined in all the codes under study except RDA 2016. Even the phrase entry is not used anywhere in RDA 2016. The probable cause behind this fact that in electronic cataloguing a record may be viewed in different views like normal, ISBD, MARC, etc., with or without formal access point. So, idea of Entry is now obsolete. RDA used the term 'description' instead of entry. The terms 'Number entry' and 'Word entry' are used once in CCC5 (1965) which describe the entries in two most unique categories as the nature of access points. These two may be stated as the product of the scientific thoughts to designate a concept in a new dimension, the great Ranganathan.

4.5.2 Number Entry related terms

There are two terms in this category – Cross reference entry and Special cross reference entry. Both these terms are used in CCCs. Number entries are only related to the classified catalogue codes and hence they are not included in the glossary of dictionary catalogues.

4.5.3 Word Entry related terms

Word entries are essential concepts in all codes whether dictionary or classified. From the beginning of catalogue code word entries have become popularised. In word entries various terms are grouped that are used in different catalogue code e.g. Added entry, Analysis, Author entry etc. Word entry generally bears author's name, title, editor or whatever case it may be as the nature of the documents. In condition codes like AACRs and CCCs documents are entered under suitable word-based access points which are determined as per the instructions of the codes. Most popular term in this category is Added entry. It is used in 9 times in 9 catalogue codes. It is to be noted that CCC used this term only in 5th ed. (Code 7). RDC included the term in glossary in 4th edition (not in the first ed.).

The term Analytical entry, Analytical reference, Analytical description, etc. are used in various dictionary catalogue codes like AACR, RDC, etc. and not used by CCCs. CCCs used the term 'Cross reference entry' which is equivalent to 'subject analytical entry'. The term 'cross reference entry' is clearer than 'analytical entry', because the former has an essence of referring something to another one. Unique terms like 'Book index entry', 'Class index entry' and 'Cross reference index entry' are used in CCC which clearly indicate the alphabetical entries are more distinct than added entries as used in dictionary catalogues. The term 'reference' has been used in various codes, all of them are dictionary catalogue codes. CCCs used the term 'Cross reference index entry' for the same concept. The later term is more appropriate because it mentions the crossness, i.e., reference between one to another and also the alphabetical nature of the entry.

'Topic index entry', another term used in CCC 1 is another new concept, which may be described as the word entry equivalent to the 'Cross reference entry'. Surprisingly

this term is not defined in the glossary but referred to the rule at Chapter 3 of CCC1.

‘Unit card’ and ‘unit entry’ as used in code numbers 5,8 and 9 are conceptually same. They are the product of CIP concepts as introduced by LOC.

4.5.4 Word Entry as well as Number Entry (WE/ NE)

There are 4 terms in this category. ‘Consolidated entry’ has been used once in Code 7, i.e., in CCC 5th ed. (1965). The phrase ‘consolidated’ has been used as it collocates various headings under a single word or number. This term is unique as used by Ranganathan. The term ‘Main entry’ though very generic in nature and used in contrast with ‘Added entry’, it may be classified as Number entry (as in classified codes) and as word entries (in dictionary catalogue codes). The term not even used in the glossary of RDA. Because in modern computerised cataloguing physical description of a record may be accessed under various related access points and no separate entries are needed to file for the same document (as in the case of manual card catalogue). The term ‘Specific entry’ is also a generic term. It has been used in two point of views. In code 1 and 2 i.e., RDC 1 and 4 the terms denote alphabetical subject entries. But in Code 7 it is used as various entries according to their access points, e.g., call number entries, specific subject entries, author entries, etc. The occurrences of Entry related terms in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.16: Occurrences of entry related terms and their categorisations

Term	Code Number	Type
Body of Entry	9, 8	Generic
Entry	12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1	Generic
Description	13	Generic
Number Entry	7	Generic
Subject Entry	7	Generic
Word Entry	7	Generic
Cross Reference Entry	7, 6, 4	NE

Special Cross Reference Entry	6	NE
Added Entry	12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 5, 3, 2	WE
Analysis	2	WE
Analytical Description	13, 8	WE
Analytical Entry	12, 11, 10, 9, 5, 3	WE
Analytical Reference	2, 1	WE
Author Analytical	7	WE
Author Entry	5, 3, 2	WE
Author Title Added Entry	9, 8	WE
Book Index Entry	7, 6, 4	WE
Class Entry	2, 1	WE
Class Index Entry	7, 6, 4	WE
Contributor Index Entry	6	WE
Corporate Entry	5, 3	WE
Cross Reference	2	WE
Cross Reference Index Entry	7, 6, 4	WE
Explanatory Reference	13	WE
General Added Entry	7	WE
General Entry	7	WE
Index Entry	6, 4	WE
Individual Entry	2	WE
Name Title Reference	12, 11	WE
Name- Title Added Entry	12, 11, 10	WE
Partial Title Entry	9, 8	WE
Reference	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 5, 3, 2, 1	WE
Series Entry	5, 3, 2	WE
Specific Added Entry	7	WE
Title Analytical	7	WE
Title Entry	5, 3	WE

Topic Index Entry	4	WE
Unit Card	9, 5	WE
Unit Entry	8	WE
Consolidated Entry	7	WE/ NE
Main Entry	12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2	WE/ NE
Specific Entry	7, 2, 1	WE/ NE

4.6 Heading Related Terms

4.6.1 Heading vs. Access Point

The term '**Heading**' has been used 12 times and 'access point' has been used 4 times. The terms are synonymous, but not the same. There is a slight but logical difference between these two terms. AACR II 2005 update defined access point as a 'search point' for the users in a catalogue. Whereas, Heading is defined as a position over a catalogue entry containing an access point. Access point is related to Canon of Sought Heading as propounded by Ranganathan. So, heading is a position, but access point is an element of description at heading position. The occurrences of Heading related terms in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.17: Occurrences of heading related terms and their categorizations

Term	Code Number	Type
Access Point	13, 12, 11, 10	Heading
Descriptive element	7	Heading
Entry element	7	Heading
Entry word	12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 5, 3	Heading
Heading	12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1	Heading
Main heading	12, 11, 10, 9, 8	Heading
Subject heading	2	Heading

4.6.2 Entry Word vs. Entry Element

Ranganathan used these both terms. Entry word is also used by other codes as the first word of access point (also used by Ranganathan in the same aspect). But entry element is used in CCC 5 only as the first block of heading section in a classified catalogue code. The alphabetical catalogue codes generally use the name headings in rendered form by separating the first name and surname with a comma (.). So the heading is always multi-blocked. So, entry word and entry element is the same entity. But in CCC name headings are used in rendered form but not separated by a comma. Hence, the total name is considered as entry element and the first word of the entry element is considered as entry word.

Example – HALL (James) in CCC 5 – here entry word is HALL and HALL (James) is entry element.

Hall, James in AACR2R here Hall and James are in two separate blocks. So, Hall is the entry element as well as entry word.

4.6.3 Main Heading

The term used in 5 catalogue codes – all of them belongs to AACR family. Main heading must have a subheading, which is only possible only in dictionary catalogue codes when title is chosen as heading.

It is to be noted that only one heading related term is included in RDA (Code 13), i.e., ‘Access point’ which is the most generic for any type of entry in a catalogue.

4.7 Preliminary Page Related Term

The scope of the ‘preliminary pages’ is all the overflow pages of a printed document other than its textual part.

The concept of preliminary pages are related to the printed records.

4.7.1 Title Page

Most occurred term in this category is ‘Title page’ having frequency ten. The latest code RDA (2016) also included the term. Term ‘added title page’ also have same kind

of occurrences. The term ‘Series title page’, is a kind of added title page by definition and also defined separately in some catalogue code (13, 12, 11). This indicates the increasing probability of occurring in the entity in the modern documents.

4.7.2 Colophon

The term ‘colophon’ also used in 6 codes from 1904 to 2005. But in RDA the term is omitted due to the fact of its gradual obsolescence in modern documents.

4.7.3 Recto and Verso

The terms ‘recto’ and ‘verso’ are used as right hand and left-hand pages of a document respectively bearing odd and even page numbers. These two terms are very generic and used in a catalogue code to indicate the front and back of the title page. The occurrences of Preliminary pages related terms in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.18: Occurrences of preliminary pages (PP) related terms and their categorizations

Term	Code number	Type
Added Title Page	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 5	PP
Colophon	12, 11, 10, 6, 4, 2	PP
Explicit	12, 11, 10	PP
Preliminaries	12, 11, 10	PP
Recto	12, 11, 10, 2	PP
Series Title Page	13. 12. 11	PP
Title Page	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3	PP
Verso	12,11,10,2	PP

4.8 Sections of Entry Related Terms

Sections of entry means different areas on an entry of a descriptive catalogue. The terms and their occurrences are discussed below:

4.8.1 Imprint

The term ‘imprint’ used in earlier codes but replaced later by the ‘publication, distribution, etc.’ This term though very sweet for pronunciation but not transparent at all and also have several homonyms. But the latter term though lengthy but very transparent.

4.8.2 Terms of Availability and Tracing

The terms ‘terms of availability’, ‘tracing’ etc. have been used in various catalogue codes but defined only in few. For example, CCC codes have a separate section named ‘Tracing’ but not defined the term in terminology section but defined only in the particular section. Similarly, AACRs used the term ‘terms of availability’ as an area of description, but not defined the term.

4.8.3 Multiworded Terms

Multi worded terms like General material designation, Specific material designation, Statement of responsibility, etc. are used in AACRs and RDA.

4.8.4 Locus

CCC 5 used a unique term Locus which is borrowed from Mathematics by Ranganathan. This represents a transformation of concept, which is an important source of terminology building.

4.8.5 Hanging Indention

Hanging indention is so popular in practical cataloguing but surprisingly the term is defined only in RDC 1904 (Code 2).

The occurrences of *Sections of entry (SE)* related terms in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.19: Occurrences of sections of entry related terms and their categorizations

Term	Code Number	Type
Collation	3, 2	SE

Edition Statement	7, 13	SE
Extent of Item	12	SE
Element	13	SE
General Material Designation	12, 11, 10	SE
Hanging Indention	2	SE
Imprint	7, 3, 2, 1	SE
Locus	7	SE
Other Title Information	13, 12, 11, 10	SE
Parallel Title Proper	13	SE
Specific Material Designation	12, 11, 10	SE
Statement of Responsibility	13, 12, 11, 10	SE
Term of Availability	13	SE
Tracing	12, 11, 10, 9, 5	SE

4.8.6 Other Title Information

This term appears in AACR family (1978-2002) as well as by RDA also. This is a clear indication that this term and its related concept is still relevant.

4.8.7 Element, Parallel Title Proper and Term of Availability

These three terms occurred in RDA only. ‘Element’ is the most generic term that denotes any component of a bibliographic description. As RDA includes many generic terms in the glossary, so it is very much expected of occurrence of this term here. AACR used the term ‘terms of availability’ as the eighth area of description, but did not define it. While in RDA, the term is used in singular form and well-defined.

4.9 Title Related Terms

Defined as the ‘name of a publication’. But the broad concept of a title has been defined in various points of view, as described below:

4.9.1 Alternative Title

These terms were not used in early codes like RDC 1 and 2 (1876 and 1904 respectively). Ranganathan used the term in CCC 5th edition (Code 7). AACR family used the term in all its editions under study. This term is used to denote the main title in an explanatory way, which was very popular from the beginning of the 20th century,

4.9.2 Binder's Title

The study shows that this term was very popular from the early days, i.e., from the beginning of 20th century. It is an evidence of the freedom of the binders to assign a meaningful title of their own at the time of binding.

4.9.3 Caption Title

The term originally used in AA 1908 (Code 3). But not used for a long time up to 1967 (AACR1) reused from AACR 2 (1978) onwards and still being used.

4.9.4 Collective Title

Denotes the ideas of a collection of several contributions. It was popularized by AACR2 onwards (Code 10). CCC used the terms Composite book, which contains the collective title. So, AACRs defined the 'title' not the document and CCC defined the 'document' not the title.

4.9.5 Cover Title

It denotes the position of a title, i.e., at the cover. A cover tile may be assigned by a binder or by a publisher. But a binder's tile must be assigned by a binder, whatever may be the position. The term was frequently used up to Code 12 (AACR 2002) but omitted in RDA 2016 release. Though the concept of the terms still exists but not changed anyway, and it is also very popular term. May it be reason that RDA 2016 release does not define the term again.

4.9.6 Half Title vs. Short Title

Both the terms used in the glossaries of different codes. Half title related to the concept of a short title occurring on the half title page. On the other hand, short title used only by Ranganathan is related to the concept of a brief title used to denote a particular book.

The occurrences of Title related terms in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.20: Occurrences of title related terms and their categorizations

Term	Occurred in
Alternative Title	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 5, 3
Binder's Title	12, 11, 10, 8, 7, 6, 4, 3, 2
Caption Title	13, 12, 11, 10, 3
Catch Word Title	5
Collective Title	13, 12, 11, 10
Conventional Title	8
Cover Title	12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 3
Devised Title	13
Fanciful title	7
Half Title	12, 11, 10, 7, 6, 4, 3
Key Title	13, 12, 11, 10
Parallel Title	12, 11, 10
Partial Title	5
Proper Name Title	7
Running Title	13, 12, 11, 10, 7, 3
Short Title	7, 6, 4
Spine Title	12, 11, 10

Subtitle	13, 8, 7, 5, 3
Supplied Title	12, 11, 10
Tell-Tell Title	7
Title	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1
Title Proper	13, 12, 11, 10
Uniform Title	12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 5
Uniformised Title	7
Variant Title	13

4.9.7 Devised Title and Supplied Title

The concept of devised title also mentioned in earlier catalogue codes like AACR 2R for document bearing no title as supplied title. The concept of devised title is very much relevant in the web environment and hence it is an essential element of RDA glossary. Here the terminological change takes place

4.9.8 Fanciful Title vs. Tell-Tale Title

Both these terms used by CCC 1965 (Code 7). They are opposite in meaning but very much practical in use. In cataloguing practice, all titles may be categorized either to be a Tell-tale or fanciful. But other codes not do not use this type of terms.

4.9.9 Title

This term is used by all the catalogue codes. This is a generic term as it is expected that each item, whatever maybe its form must possess a title.

4.9.10 Title Proper and Subtitle

These two terms are complementary to each other and simultaneously defined in 5 codes only. Code 13, i.e., RDA 2016 release defined the term in other sense other than the part of the title.

4.9.11 Uniform Title and Uniformed Title

Both terms refer to the same thing. It was first specified in ALA 1949 (Code 5) and has since been defined in all AACR codes. The term was employed in the verb form in CCC 5, resulting in a subtle change in vocabulary. RDA 2016 does not employ the notion because it is no longer relevant in our context.

4.9.12 Variant Title

This term newly coined in RDA 2016. This indicates various forms of a title as assigned by the cataloguer (e.g., 100 nights may be recorded as Hundred nights, etc.). Inclusion of this term indicates the freedom of cataloguer to assign the title different from the title proper.

4.10 Unused Terms

‘Unused’ terms mean the non-preferred terms which are replaced by synonymous ‘preferred terms’ in various catalogue codes. The terms found unused under the study are discussed below.

4.10.1 Analysis and Analytical

Both this term were replaced by Analytical reference in RDC 1876 and RDC 1904 respectively. The probable cause of replacement may be the more transparency and concreteness than the term ‘Analysis’ and ‘Analytical’.

4.10.2 Audio Captioning

This term was replaced by Audio description in RDA 2016 release. The term ‘Audio’ description is more transparent about what does it mean in actual definition.

4.10.3 Audio Recording

This term was replaced by Sound recording in AACR 2R 1988 and AACR 2R 2003 update. The term Sound is more generic as well as more recall value than Audio. All audios are sound, but all sounds are not Audio (sounds may be non-audible).

4.10.4 Author

The term Author has been replaced by Personal author and Corporate author in various codes. Ranganathan in his CCC 1st ed., 1934 used the terms Personal author and Corporate author instead of Author. AACR groups also followed the same. The terms Personal author and Corporate author are more specific and concrete than the broader term Author. The emergence of the concept 'Corporate author' may be operative behind this resolution of the term Author.

4.10.5 Author-Title Added Entry and Author-Title Reference

These two terms have been replaced by 'Name-title added entry' and 'Name-title reference' respectively. Author is the person or corporate body who creates a document, and 'Name' signifies the actual nomenclature of the Author. Sometimes there are many names in a work i.e., Author, editor, translator, etc. But the concept is that only Author is eligible for this added entry. So, Author-Title added entry may be more appropriate. But it is also true that the phrase 'Name tile' is more linguistically economic than the phrase 'Author title'.

4.10.6 Bastard Title

This term was replaced by Half title. There are various meanings of Bastard, most of them are not descent, and only one meaning is related to the cataloguing concept, which is informal. The term 'Half-title' is more concrete as well as more reticence value than 'Bastard'.

4.10.7 Broadsheet

This term has been replaced by 'Broadside'. Broadsheet denotes to a particular paper size (57 cm long) in general, applied for newspapers. But the definition of the concept refers to a single sided written page to be used unfolded.

4.10.8 Chart (Cartography)

Replaced rightly by 'map'. The term 'Map' has more transparency than 'Chart (Cartography)'.

4.10.9 Cine Film

This term replaced by 'Motion picture'. Motion picture express the concept of movies more distinct than 'Cine film'.

4.10.10 Close Score

Replaced by 'Condensed score'. The terms denote the reduction of musical staves in a 'condensed form' and hence 'Condensed score' have better implication than 'closed score'.

4.10.11 Collector

Replaced by Author in RDC 1876.'At the beginning stage of library cataloguing the extension of the term Collector goes under the purview of Author. But in later cases Collector was recognized as a separate responsibility related term and become preferred term (in RDC 1904 and RDA 2016)

4.10.12 Computer file

Replaced by 'Electronic resources'. 'Electronic resource' is a more generalized term than 'Computer file' and hence can include a large variety of documents compatible in computer system. Moreover, it is to be noted that any 'electronic resource' must be a 'computer file' in having extensions as applicable, but 'electronic resource' is more analogous to other resources of the library and hence it is more appropriate.

4.10.13 Cross Reference vs. Reference

The term 'Cross-reference' has been replaced by the term 'Reference' in many cases. Reference is economical (linguistic economy is maintained here). 'Reference' creates more transparency than 'Cross reference' and hence it is more acceptable.

4.10.14 Editor

This term has been replaced by the term Author in two earlier codes RDC'1 (1876), RDC (1904). It is very surprising, but at that time the edited works were not so large and so the edition activities were superimposed by the activities of Author.

4.10.15 Engineering Drawing

This term was replaced by 'Technical drawing'. The concept behind this term is a drawing by engineers by following some technical standards. So technical aspect is more significant here and thus 'Technical drawing' is more appropriate.

4.10.16 Filing Title and Standard Title

This term has been replaced by 'Uniform title' in many catalogue codes. 'Filing title' is an ambiguous term by conveying the idea of a title that filed for a document. But in practice, it is a common title for various forms of a document (published under different titles) to collocate them in a library catalogue uniformly under a particular heading. So 'Uniform title' is appropriate here.

4.10.17 Mixed Authorship and Shared Authorship

Behind the creation of a document, there may exist various responsibilities shared by different bodies-Authors, editors, translators, illustrators, etc. So 'Mixed authorship' has been rightly replaced by 'mixed responsibility'. At the same time, 'Shared authorship' has been replaced by 'Shared responsibility'.

4.10.18 Overhead Projectual/ Projectural

These two terms have been replaced by 'Transparency' and 'Overhead transparency' respectively. The concept is related to a document recorded on a transparent material and to be shown overhead by a projector. So 'Overhead transparency' is more transparent than other terms, i.e., Transparency or 'Overhead projectural'.

4.10.19 Secondary Entry

This term is often confusing with the idea that there is a 'Primary entry'. But actually, there is the Main entry and other additional entries those referring to Main entry. So Added entry (derived from Additional entry) is more transparent in this case.

4.10.20 Subject Analytical

This term has been replaced by 'Cross reference entry' by CCC 3 and CCC 5 in 1951 and 1965 respectively. But 'Subject analytical' is more transparent than 'Cross

reference entry’. Probably CCC 3 and 5 emphasized the fact of referring from one entry point to another entry point (i.e., Crossing or intersection) and so the phrase ‘Cross reference’ has been used (CCC also used Cross reference index entry).

4.10.21 Thesis

This term replaced by ‘Dissertation, Academic’ in two codes AA 1908 and ALA 1949. Though ‘Dissertation, Academic’ is a very generic term and not clearly brings the flavour of ‘Thesis’ as known to the academic communities. The unused(non-preferred) terms along with their replacements in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.21: List of unused terms and their occurrences

Unused Term	Replaced By	Code Number
Analysis	Analytical Reference	1
Analytical	Analytical Reference	2
Audio Captioning	Audio Description	13
Audio Recording	Sound Recording	11
Audio Recording	Sound Recording	12
Author	Personal Author, Corporate Author	4
Author	Personal Author	10
Author	Personal Author	11
Author	Personal Author	12
Author-Title Added Entry	Name-Title Added Entry	11
Author-Title Reference	Name-Title Reference	11
Bastard Title	Half Title	3
Broadsheet	Broadside	10
Broadsheet	Broadside	11
Broadsheet	Broadside	12
Chart (Cartography)	Map	11
Cine film	Motion Picture	10
Cine film	Motion Picture	11

Cine film	Motion Picture	12
Close Score	Condensed Score	13
Collector	Author	1
Computer File	Electronic Resource	12
Conjoint Authorship	Joint Authorship	2
Conventional Title	Uniform Title	5
Conventional Title	Uniform Title	9
Cross Reference	Reference	1
Cross Reference	Reference	5
Cross Reference	Reference	8
Cross Reference	Reference	9
Cross Reference	Reference	10
Cross Reference	Reference	11
Cross Reference	Reference	12
Editor	Author	1
Editor	Author	2
Electronic Flash Card	Flash Card	13
Engineering Drawing	Technical Drawing	12
Extract	Excerpt	5
Filing Title	Uniform Title	8
Filing Title	Uniform Title	9
Filing Title	Uniform Title	10
Filing Title	Uniform Title	11
Filing Title	Uniform Title	12
Filing Word	Entry Word	5
Full Score	Score	10
Full Score	Score	13
Full Score	Score	12
Half Title	Title	2
Machine Readable Data File (MRDF)	Computer File	11
Machine Readable Data	Electronic Resource	12

File (MRDF)		
Mechanical Drawing	Technical Drawing	12
Microform	Microreproduction	8
Mixed Authorship	Mixed Responsibility	10
Mixed Authorship	Mixed Responsibility	11
Mixed Authorship	Mixed Responsibility	12
Monograph Series	Series 1	10
Monographic Series	Series 1	8
Monographic Series	Series 1	9
Monographic Series	Series	12
Multivolume Monograph	Multipart Item	10
Multivolume Monograph	Multipart Item	12
Overhead Projectural	Transparency	10
Overhead Projectural	Transparency	12
Overhead Projectural	Overhead Transparency	13
Phonorecord	Sound Recording	11
Phonorecord	Sound Recording	12
Plan (Cartography)	Map	11
Plan (Cartography)	Map	12
Printing	Facsimile Reproduction, Impression, Issue, Reprint	10
Printing	Facsimile Reproduction, Impression	12
Reduced Score	Condensed Score	13
Reissue	Issue, Reprint	10
Reissue	Issue, Reprint	11
Reissue	Issue, Reprint	12
Related Music	Adaptation Music	12
Resource, Electronic	Electronic Resource	12
Secondary Entry	Added Entry	5
Secondary Entry	Added Entry	8
Secondary Entry	Added Entry 1	9

Secondary Entry	Added Entry	10
Secondary Entry	Added Entry	11
Secondary Entry	Added Entry	12
Separate	Reprint 2	3
Shared Authorship	Shared Responsibility	10
Shared Authorship	Shared Responsibility	11
Shared Authorship	Shared Responsibility	12
Short Score	Condensed Score	13
Standard Title	Uniform Title	8
Standard Title	Uniform Title	9
Standard Title	Uniform Title	12
Subject Analytical	Cross Reference Entry	7, 6
Subject Entry	Entry	1
Thesis	Dissertation, Academic	3
Thesis	Dissertation, Academic	5
Transcription (Music)	Adaptation (Music), Arrangement (Music)	11
Transcription (Music)	Adaptation (Music), Arrangement (Music)	12

4.11 Homonyms

Homonyms in cataloguing means same term used in many senses with variant meanings. Homonyms may be of two types – Homographs and homophones.

Homographs are identical in both spelling and pronunciation, but homophones are different in spelling but same in pronunciation. In catalogue codes under the study, few homonyms are found which are actually homographs. They are as follows:

It is a common practice in cataloguing terminology that homonyms are identified by their subject qualifiers in circular brackets. In RDA 2016 there are some terms with qualifiers in circular bracket. But the qualifiers are the four basic elements of RDA i.e., Work, Expression, Manifestation and Item and which are not certainly subject qualifiers. So, these terms are not taken for discussion here.

4.11.1 Adaptation (Music)

‘Adaptation’ is a generic term which means to adapt something for a particular purpose. Here, music is used as qualifier to restrict the concept of the term to relate to musical documents only.

4.11.2 Arrangement (Music)

This term has been used in three catalogue codes of AACR family. This term also used for the same purpose as Adaptation (music).

4.11.3 Catalogue (of Books)

The term catalogue first found in the glossary of RDC 4th ed. 1904 as per the study. Catalogue (of books) is an effort to restrict the term in cataloguing field as the term catalogue is also applicable to another field. This term occurs in AA 1908, at that time book documents were predominant in hence it was the logical attempt to sharpening the concept of cataloguing with books.

4.11.4 Chart (Cartography)

This term first used in AACR 2R 1988. The term ‘Chart’ also used in this code. In AACR 1978 the term ‘Chart’ was defined in two sense-one in general sense and the other in cartographic sense. But in 1988 edition the cartography concept was separately defined under the term ‘Chart (Cartography)’, thus increasing the transparency of the term and also the preciseness of the definition.

4.11.5 Edition

Here four senses of ‘Edition’ are defined under four different homonyms of ‘Edition’ individualized by the type of documents rather than the topic area of their occurrences. It is a new creation of coining homonyms (Table 4.22).

4.11.6 Part (Music)

As same as arrangement music.

4.11.7 Section (Serials)

The term defined the concept which is related to serials only. The term ‘Section’ itself is a very popular term and denotes the component part of an entity. The similar concept for a part of a serial has been designated by this term. In AACR 2002 another term ‘Section (Cartography)’ was coined and so ‘Section (Serials)’ differs the former term with the qualifier ‘serials’. The homonyms found in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 4.22: Homonyms and their occurrences

Term	Code Name	Code Number	Remarks
Adaptation (music)	AACR 2002 (2003 update)	12	
Arrangement (music)	AACR 2002 (2003 update)	12	
Arrangement (music)	AACR 2R 1988	11	
Arrangement (music)	AACR 1978	10	
Catalogue (of books)	AA 1908	3	
Chart (Cartography)	AACR 2002 (2003 update)	12	The term Chart also exists here
Chart(cartography)	AACR 2R 1988	11	The term Chart also exists here
Edition: books, pamphlets, etc.	AACR 2R	11	
Edition: books, pamphlets, single sheets, etc.	AACR 2002 (2003 update)	12	
Edition: computer files	AACR 2R	11	
Edition: electronic resource	AACR 2002 (2003 update)	12	
Edition: other materials	AACR 2002 (2003 update)	12	

Edition: other materials	AACR 2R	11	
Edition: unpublished items	AACR 2002 (2003 update)	12	
Edition: unpublished items	AACR 2R	11	
Part (music)	AACR 2002 (2003 update)	12	The term Part also exists here
Part (music)	AACR 2R	11	The term Part also exists here
Section (serials)	AACR 2R	11	The term Section (Cartography) also exists here

4.12 Conclusion

From the occurrence study of about 321 terms as taken for the research, it is revealed that terms occurred in the glossaries of various catalogue codes in different manner:

- In most times, terms used once in a particular code.
- The term used in two different codes in two different times in two different senses, e.g., Curator used in code 2 and code 13 but scope of the concept changed.
- Some terms used continuously in a particular code family, like AACR or CCC.
- Some terms are being used from the very beginning of the cataloguing era 1876 to the most recent times, i.e., 2016.
- Some terms are made more pinpointed by using a qualifier like Library catalogue, Catalogue (of books) (Table 4.2).
- FRBR elements are used as qualifier in the RDA glossary, like Catalogue (work) (Section 4.2.3).

- Surprisingly the term Catalogue itself was not defined in the first code under the study, i.e., in RDC 1 (1876).
- Some terms identified and defined in RDA which were not considered before as cataloguing item, like Game.
- CCC in different editions defined some unique terms emerged from the philosophy of S.R. Ranganathan, like Macro document, Micro document, Speaking book, etc.
- In some cases, punctuation marks are used for inverting the term in terms like Dissertation, Academic (Section 4.3.12), Edition: Electronic resources, etc. (Section 4.4.1)
- No abbreviation or acronym found to be used as term.
- Some terms are used as non-preferred term in earlier codes but used as preferred terms in later codes, e.g., Editor.

Where the frequency of occurrences is concerned, 27 terms among 321 terms under the study have been found to have occurrence frequency greater than fifty percent. They are selected as *core terms*. The rank list of core terms is shown in the following table:

(For the detailed rank list, please consult Appendix 1A)

Table 4.23 List of core terms with their ranking score

Serial No.	Term	Category	Total Number of Codes it Occurs	Total Number of Codes Under Study	Percentage of Occurrence
1	Title	Title	13	13	100
2	Volume	Document	13	13	100
3	Entry	Entry	12	13	92.30
4	Heading	Heading	12	13	92.30

5	Serial	Document	12	13	92.30
6	Compiler	Author	11	13	84.61
7	Main Entry	Entry	11	13	84.61
8	Series	Sections Of Entry	11	13	84.61
9	Title Page	Preliminary Page	11	13	84.61
10	Editor	Author	10	13	76.92
11	Joint Author	Author	10	13	76.92
12	Reference	Entry	10	13	76.92
13	Added Entry	Entry	9	13	69.23
14	Alternative Title	Title	9	13	69.23
15	Binder's Title	Title	9	13	69.23
16	Corporate Body	Author	9	13	69.23
17	Catalogue	Catalogue	8	13	61.53
18	Collection	Document	8	13	61.53
19	Entry Word	Heading	8	13	61.53
20	Periodical	Document	8	13	61.53
21	Added Title Page	Preliminary Pages	7	13	53.84
22	Atlas	Document	7	13	53.84
23	Author	Author	7	13	53.84
24	Edition	Edition	7	13	53.84
25	Half Title	Title	7	13	53.84
26	Monograph	Document	7	13	53.84
27	Translator	Author	7	13	53.84

So, different terms appeared and defined in different catalogue codes with the

progress of time. Among 321 terms under the study only 27 terms have been found to have occurrence frequency greater than fifty percent. This shows that there are some key terms are being used for a long time in the cataloguing world. Other terms appear in a certain time period either at the beginning stages or at the modern ages as per the requirements of the cataloguing.

The cataloguing terms are not always free from homonyms and synonyms. For synonyms 'see' references are used. Homonyms are mostly homographs and individualised by qualifiers in circular brackets.

Chapter – 5

Evolution of Cataloguing Concepts: Changes in the Definitions of Cataloguing Terms

The concepts are conveyed using terms. A term's definitions serve as a semantic representation of that term's meaning. The changes in a term's meaning over time show how the ideas associated with that term have changed. To assess the changes in the definitions of the cataloguing terms through time, a sample of 27 terms that are considered as core terms are selected based on their occurrences in a chosen set of 13 catalogue codes. The definitions are analyzed critically, and inferences are drawn to look at how cataloguing concepts have changed over time.

The 13 codes covered under study are listed below:

1. Rules for dictionary catalogue by C.A. Cutter, 1st edition, published in 1876, i.e., RDC 1876

2. Rules for a dictionary catalogue by C.A. Cutter, 4th edition published in 1904, i.e., RDC 4 1904
3. Cataloguing rules; author and title entries [AA code] published in 1908, i.e., AA 1908
4. Classified Catalogue Code, 1st edition, published in 1934, i.e., CCC 1 1934
5. Classified Catalogue Code, 3rd edition, published in 1951 i.e., CCC 3 1951
6. Classified catalogue code with additional rules for dictionary catalogue code, 5th edition, published in 1964, i.e., CCC 5 1964
7. ALA cataloguing rules for author and title, published in 1949, i.e., ALA 1949
8. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules (British Text), published in 1967, i.e., AACR 1967 BT
9. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules (North American Text), published in 1967, i.e., AACR 1967 NT
10. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd edition, published in 1978, i.e., AACR 2 1978
11. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd revised edition, published in 1988, i.e., AACR 2R 1988
12. Anglo American Cataloguing Rules, 2003 update, i.e., AACR 2002
13. Resource Description and Access, 2016 release, i.e., RDA 2016

5.1 Added Entry

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Added entry* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.1: Evolution of Definitions of Added Entry

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
2 (RDC 4 1904)	A secondary entry, i.e., any other than a main entry
3 (AA 1908)	A secondary entry, i.e. Any other than the main entry
5 (ALA 1949)	A secondary entry, i.e. Any other than the main entry
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Entry other than main entry
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	An entry, additional to the main entry, by which a bibliographical entity is represented in a catalogue; a secondary entry
9(AACR 1967 NT)	An entry, additional to the main entry, under which a bibliographical entity is represented in a catalogue; a secondary entry
10(AACR 2 1978)	An entry, additional to the main entry, by which an item is represented in a catalogue; a secondary entry
11(AACR 2R 1988)	An entry, additional to the main entry, by which an item is represented in a catalogue; a secondary entry
12(AACR 2R 2002)	An entry, additional to the main entry, by which an item is represented in a catalogue; a secondary entry

5.1.1 Discussion

RDC 4 1904 definition is a very brief definition and not precise in nature. It has a negative component ‘any other than a main entry’. The same definition is repeated in AA 1908 and ALA1949.

CCC 5 1965 used almost the same definition by omitting the word ‘secondary’.

AACR family from 1967 BT to 2002 revisions used the same definition of the term, but they consider the term as ‘additional’ to the main entry

All the codes except CCC 5 consider the term added entry as a secondary entry to the main entry.

5.1.2 Inference

The term ‘Added entry’ is defined in almost every code under study during 1904 to 2002. In RDA 2016 the term is omitted, probably due to the fact that the concept of added entries is no longer valid in FRBR era. The definitions up to 1965 were negative definitions, i.e., added entries are defined as ‘non-main entries’. This should not be happened. From 1967(AACR I) onwards the definitions are positive where the concept is defined as additional entries to a main entry, but the main theme of all the definitions remains intact.

5.2 Added Title Page

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Added title page* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.2: Evolution of Definitions of Added title page

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
5 (ALA 1949)	A title page complementary to the one chosen for the main entry for the work.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A title page preceding or following the title page chosen as the basis for the description of the publication.
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	A title page preceding or following the title page chosen as the basis for the description of the publication.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	A title page preceding or following the title page chosen as the basis for the description of the item. It may be more general, as a series title page or equally general, as a title page in another language.

11 (AACR 2R 1988)	A title page preceding or following the title page chosen as the basis for the description of the item. It may be more general, as a series title page, or equally general, as a title page in another language.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	A title page preceding or following the title page chosen as the basis for the description of the item. It may be more general, (e.g., a series title page), or equally general, (e.g., title page in another language).
13 (RDA 2016)	A title page preceding or following the title page chosen as the preferred source of information. An added title page may be more general, equally general. A series title page is an example of a more general title page; a title page in another language is an example of an equally general title page.

5.2.1 Discussion

ALA 1949 defined the term ‘Added Title Page’ as ‘complementary’ to the title page.

Other definitions mentioned the position of the page ‘preceding’ the title page.

All the definitions mentioned the significance of the Added title page as the additional sources of information complementary to that of title page.

From AACR 1978 to RDA 2016 all the definitions are almost same. These definitions also mentioned the categories of added title page as ‘more general’ and ‘equally general’.

5.2.2 Inference

This term occurs in the terminologies of dictionary catalogue codes starting from 1949 to 2016. The definitions are not as clear as to distinct the concept from that of ‘title page’. From 1967 onwards, definitions are more supported with suitable examples. The concept is still relevant in the cataloguing world.

5.3 Alternative Title

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Alternative title* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.3: Evolution of Definitions of Alternative title

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
3 (AA 1908)	A subtitle introduced by 'or' or its equivalent
5 (ALA 1949)	A subtitle introduced by 'or' or its equivalent
7 (CCC 5 1965)	A subtitle introduced by 'or' or its equivalent, and forming part of the title
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A second title introduced by 'or' or its equivalent
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	A second title introduced by 'or' or its equivalent
10 (AACR 2 1978)	A second part of a title proper that consists of two parts, each of which is a title; the parts are joined by the word 'or' or its equivalent in another language
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	The second part of a title proper that consists of two parts, each of which is a title; the parts are joined by the word or its equivalent in another language, e.g., The tempest, or, The enchanted island
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	The second part of a title proper that consists of two parts, each of which is a title; the parts are joined by the word or its equivalent in another language, e.g., The tempest, or, The enchanted ISLAND
13 (RDA 2016)	A second part of a title proper that consists of two parts, each of which has the form of an independent title, joined by a word such as 'or' or its equivalent in another language

5.3.1 Discussion

AA1908 and ALA 1949 defined the term as a ‘subtitle’.

CCC 5 1965 has given a redundant definition by using ‘subtitle’ and ‘forming part of the title’ at a time.

From AACR 1967 onwards the definitions are almost same but slight changes in wordings. Some codes like AACR21988, etc. have exemplified the concept.

All the codes mentioned the indicator phrase, i.e., the conjunction ‘or’ to denote an alternative title.

5.3.2 Inference

At the beginning stages the definitions were very brief but elaborated in later times.

The main theme of the concept remains unchanged.

5.4 Atlas

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Atlas* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.4: Evolution of definitions of Atlas

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
5 (ALA 1949)	A volume of maps, plates, engravings, tables, etc., with or without descriptive letterpress
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A volume of maps, plates, engravings, tables, etc with or without descriptive letterpress
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	A volume of maps, plates, engravings, tables, etc with or without descriptive letterpress

10 (AACR 2 1978)	A volume of maps, plates, engravings, tables, etc. with or without descriptive letterpress. It may be an independent publication, or it may have been issued to accompany one or more volumes of text
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	A volume of maps, plates, engravings, tables, etc., with or without descriptive text. It may be an independent publication, or it may have been issued as accompanying material.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	A volume of maps, plates, engravings, tables, etc., with or without descriptive letterpress. It may be an independent publication, or it may have been issued to accompany one or more volumes of text.
13 (RDA 2016)	A unit of extent that is a volume of maps or other cartographic content with or without descriptive text. This term applies to cartographic resources

5.4.1 Discussion

The term first defined in ALA1949. It was designated as the ‘volume of maps’. All the definitions have followed almost same wordings.

From 1978 onwards the trends started to consider ‘atlas’ as an independent publication or as the part of a publication. This statement shows that atlas was considered as a separate published document, which is still very much relevant.

Only the RDA definition restricted the term in cartographic sense, which is clearer than other definitions.

5.4.2 Inference

Up to 1967 the definition was too short but precise. From 1978 onwards, the definition found more elaborate and concise. The main theme of the concept remains unchanged.

5.5 Author

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Author* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.5: Evolution of definitions of Author

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
1 (RDC 1876)	In the narrower sense is the person who writes a book; in a wider sense it may be applied to him who is the cause of the book's existence by putting together the writings of several authors.
2 (RDC 4 1904)	In the narrower sense is the person who writes a book; in a wider sense it may be applied to him who is the cause of the book's existence by putting together the writings of several authors.
3 (AA 1908)	1. The writer of a book, as distinguished, from translator, editor, etc. 2. In a broader sense, the maker of the book or the person or body immediately responsible for its existence. Thus, a person who collects and put together the writings of several authors (compiler or editor) may be said to be the author of a collection. Corporate bodies may be considered the authors of publications issued in their name or by their authority

5 (ALA 1949)	1. The writer of a work, as distinguished from the translator, editor, etc. By extension, an artist, composer, photographer, cartographer, etc. 2. In the broader sense, the maker of the work or the person or body immediately responsible for its existence. Thus, a compiler or editor may be considered as author.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	The person or corporate body chiefly responsible for the creation of the intellectual or artistic content of a work, e.g., the writer of a book, the compiler of a bibliography, the composer of a musical work, the artist who paints a picture, the photographer who takes a photograph, a corporate body reporting on its activities.
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	The person or corporate body chiefly responsible for the creation of the intellectual or artistic content of a work, e.g., the writer of a book, the compiler of a bibliography, the composer of a musical work, the artist who paints a picture, the photographer who takes a photograph, a corporate body reporting on its activities.
13 (RDC 2016)	An agent responsible for creating a work that is primarily textual in content, regardless of media type or genre. Creation of a new work by paraphrasing, rewriting, or adapting works by another creator, if the modification has substantially changed the nature and content of the original or changed the medium of expression, is included.

5.5.1 Discussion

The term ‘author’ occurs in almost every catalogue code under study. It was first used in RDC 1876 and latest by RDA 2016 update. In CCC11934 the term personal author was used first and various other codes after CCC 1 and used the term ‘Personal author’ instead of author.

The definitions at the beginning stages RDC 1876 and RDC 4 1904 define the concept of the writer of the book, moreover the concept of edition also included in the definition. So, the definition was given on a wider aspect. In later time, AA1908 and ALA 1949 define the concept in the same way, but two separate definitions were given. AACR 1967 texts define the concepts as previous but supported by suitable examples of writer, compiler, composer etc. The definition of RDA is most generalized among all, but it has emphasized the textual content creation prominently for being an author. So, the term author has been defined in a broader aspect of creating, editing, compiling, rewriting, and adaptation etc. of a work. The main theme of the definition remains unchanged, that is the responsibility of creating a document in various ways.

5.5.2 Inference

The definitions become narrower in the sense of creation of work rather than involvement with collaboration like editing, translating, etc.

5.6 Binder’s Title

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Binder’s title* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.6: Evolution of definitions of Binder's title

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
2 (RDC 4 1904)	The title lettered on the binding of a book.

3 (AA 1908)	The title lettered on the back of a book by the binders, as distinguished from the title on the publisher's original binding or cover.
4 (CCC 1934)	The title lettered on the binding of a book
6 (CCC 1951)	The title lettered on the binding of a book.
7 (CCC 1965)	Short title, usually found tooled on the spine of a book
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	The title as supplied by the binder of a book
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	The title as supplied by the binder of a book
10 (AACR 2 1978)	The title lettered on the cover of an item by a binder, as distinguished from the title on the publisher's original cover
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	A title lettered on the cover of an item by a binder, as distinguished from a title on the publisher's original cover
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	A title lettered on the cover of an item by a binder, as distinguished from a title on the publisher's original cover

5.6.1 Discussion

There are many variations in the definitions of the term. The earlier definitions mentioned the terms as an entity 'lettered on the binding of the book'. Up to 1951 CCC 3rd edition this trend continued. In 1965 CCC5 designated the position of the entity on the spine of the book. AACR1967 BT and NAT denoted the provider of the term, i.e., the binder. So, these definitions are most transparent and precise. From AACR 1978 to 2002 both the position and the provider are mentioned.

The last three definitions also mentioned the distinction of the terms from the original title. So as the time progresses, the definitions have become clearer and most distinct.

5.6.2 Inference

The definitions show slight variations in the statements regarding the position and provider of the concept.

5.7 Catalogue

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Catalogue* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.7: Evolution of definitions of Catalogue

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
2 (RDC 4 1904)	A list of books which is arranged on some definite plan.
4 (CCC 1934)	List of works, i.e., books and periodical publications in some library or collection, prepared on some definite plan.
5 (ALA 1949)	A list of books, maps, etc. Arranged according to some definite plans.
6 (CCC 3 1951)	List of works, i.e., books and periodical publications in some library or collection, prepared on some definite plan.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A list of books or other library materials contained in a collection or a group of collections, arranged according to some definite plans.
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	A list of books, maps, etc., arranged according to some definite plans.

11 (AACR 2R 1988)	1. A list of library materials contained in a collection, a library, or a group of libraries, arranged according to some definite plan. 2. In a wider sense, a list of materials prepared for a particular purpose, e.g., an exhibition catalogue, a sales catalogue.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	1. A list of library materials contained in a collection, a library, or a group of libraries, arranged according to some definite plan. 2. In a wider sense, a list of materials prepared for a particular purpose, e.g., an exhibition catalogue, a sales catalogue.
13 (RDA 2016)	A work that consists of a complete enumeration of items arranged systematically.

5.7.1 Discussion

The term ‘catalogue’ is very popular in general as well as in library and information science field. But some catalogue codes surprisingly did not define the term in their glossaries. The first code RDC1876 did not use the term in the glossary, though it is the only code that mentioned the objectives of library catalogue.

RDC1904 defined the term as ‘list of books. Other definitions included the concept of books and other materials like periodicals, maps,etc. This changes in the definitions clearly indicates the evolution of documents with time.

AACR 1988 and 2002 used two definitions. One in library sense and another in general sense.It is confusing for library science users.

Ranganathan in CCC5 used the term ‘Library catalogue’ instead of ‘catalogue’ which is more transparent.

All the definitions mentioned the ‘arrangement’ which is an inseparable part of a catalogue.

5.7.2 Inference

At the beginning stages, book like documents were emphasized in the definitions. From 1988 onwards, definitions are more generalized by including library materials rather than books.

5.8 Collection

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Collection* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.8: Evolution of definitions of Collection

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
3 (AA 1908)	A number of works or parts of works considered as constituting a whole.
5 (ALA 1949)	Three or more separate works or parts of works not forming a treatise or monograph on a single subject, combined and issued together as a whole.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	If by one author: three or more independent works or parts of works published together; If by more than one author: two or more independent works or parts of works published together and not written for the same occasion or for the publication in hand.
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	If by one author: three or more independent works or parts of works published together; If by more than one author: two or more independent works or parts of works published together and not written for the same occasion or for the publication in hand.

10 (AACR 2 1978)	If by one author: three or more independent works or parts of works published together. If by more than one author: two or more independent works or parts of works published together and not written for the same occasion or for the publication in hand.
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	1. Three or more independent works or parts of works by one author published together. 2. Two or more independent works or parts of works by more than one author published together and not written for the same occasion or for the publication in hand.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	1. Three or more independent works or parts of works published together. 2. Two or more independent works or parts of works by more than one author published together and not written for the same occasion or for the publication in hand.
13 (RDA 2016)	A group of resources assembled by an agent from a variety of sources.

5.8.1 Discussion

Code number 1 and 2 did not use the term. It may be the concept was not so popular at that time. The ideas of collaborative publication were not so familiar at that moment of time. AACR family defined the term in two senses-one for single author and another for more than one authors. The purpose of a collection is to publish separate works of a single author or more than one author in a single volume. Second definitions of AACR (1967-2002) also defined the condition of collection for more than one author, i.e., ‘not written for the same occasion’.

RDA 2016 has given the most generalized definition by mentioning the phrases like ‘resources’, ‘agent’, etc.

Surprisingly, CCC do not use the term. Instead, they used ‘Composite book’ which is more transparent and scientific.

5.8.2 Inference

The concept is defined in more or less the same in language. Up to 2002 the theme of the definition is confined into ‘works, but in RDA 2016 the definition is more generalized as the phrase ‘works’ replaced by the ‘resources’.

5.9 Compiler

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Compiler* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.9: Evolution of definitions of Compiler

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
3 (AA 1908)	One who produces a work by collecting and putting together a written or printed matter from various sources.
4 (CCC 1934)	One who makes a written or printed work by arrangement of materials collected from various written or printed sources. In modern usage, opposed to personal author.
5 (ALA 1949)	One who produces a work by collecting and putting together written or printed matter from the works of various authors. Also, one who chooses and combines into one work selections or quotations from one author.
6 (CCC3 1951)	One who makes a written or printed work by arrangement of materials collected from various written or printed sources.
7 (CCC5 1965)	Author, personal or corporate, making up a work by collecting information from various sources and arranging them in a particular way/
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	One who produces a work or collection by collecting and putting together written or printed matter from the works of various authors. Also, one who chooses and combines into one work selections or quotations from one author.

9 (AACR 1967NT)	One who produces a work or collection by collecting and putting together written or printed matter from the works of various authors. Also, one chooses and combines into one work selections or quotations from one author.
10 (AACR2 1978)	One who produces a collection by selecting and putting together matter from the works of various persons or bodies. Also, one who selects and puts together in one publication matter from the works of one person or body.
11(AACR2R 1988)	1. One who produces a collection by selecting and putting together matter from the works of various persons or bodies. 2. One who selects and puts together in one publication matter from the works of one person or body.
12 (AACR2R 2002)	1. One who produces a collection by selecting and putting together matter from the works of various persons or bodies. 2. One who selects and puts together in one publication matter from the works of one person or body.
13 (RDA 2016)	An agent responsible for creating a new work such as a bibliography or a directory by selecting, arranging, aggregating, and editing data, information, etc. Revising or clarifying the content, selecting and putting together works or parts of work, by one or more creators is excluded.

5.9.1 Discussion

All the codes defined the role of Compiler as ‘collection’ and ‘putting together’ the works of the others. So, these codes defined the concept as mere selection and putting together of the works of the others. AACR family defined the term in two senses -one for a single author and another for multiple authors. All the codes agreed with the fact that Compiler is not an ‘author’.

RDA 2016 distinguished clearly the concepts of ‘compilation’ and ‘editing’.

5.9.2 Inference

The statement of the definition almost remains the same. The 2016 definition is more elaborated and the word ‘agent’ has been used instead of person.

5.10 Corporate Body

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Corporate body* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.10: Evolution of definitions of Corporate body

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
4 (CCC 1934)	A number of persons taken collectively, usually as united and organized in a common cause or for common action.
6 (CCC3 1951)	A number of persons taken collectively, usually as united and organized in a common cause or for common action.
7 (CCC5 1965)	1. A number of persons taken collectively- usually a united or organized, or coming together informally in a common cause or for a common action 2. A number of corporate bodies taken collectively- usually a united or organized, or coming together informally in a common cause or for a common action
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	An organization or group of persons that is identified by a name and that acts or may act as an entity.
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	An organization or group of persons that is identified by a name and that acts or may act as an entity.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	An organization or group of persons that is identified by a particular name and that acts, or may act, as an entity.

11 (AACR 2R 1988)	An organization or that is identified group of persons by a particular name and that acts, or may act, as an entity. Typical examples of corporate bodies are associations, institutions, business firms, non-profit enterprises, governments, government agencies, religious bodies, local churches, and conferences.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	An organization or group of persons that is identified by a particular name and that acts, or may act, as an entity. Typical examples of corporate bodies are associations, institutions, business firms, non-profit enterprises, governments, government agencies, religious bodies, local churches, and conferences.
13 (RDA 2016)	1. A corporate body of which a person is a member. 2. An organization or group of persons and/or organizations that is identified by a particular name and that acts, or may act, as a unit.

5.10.1 Discussion

The term ‘corporate body’ first used by Sir Anthony Panizzi in the British museum code of 1841. But it was defined first by CCC1(1934). According to the first definition of corporate body in CCC1 it is a group of persons assembled with some common objectives. CCC 3 (1951) repeated the same definition.

But in CCC 5 (1965) corporate body defined in two senses – in the first sense as a group of persons (like Governments, Missions, Trade Unions, etc.)

In the second sense – as a group of corporate bodies (like United Nations, IFLA, Association of Indian Universities, etc.).

So, these definitions of CCC5 may be considered more concise and precise.

All the definitions as stated above after 1965 described the term in two senses.

Definitions of AACR1988 and 2002 also have given examples to clarify the concept.

The theme of the concept does not change abruptly during the period of evolution.

5.10.2 Inference

The statement of the definition almost remains the same. The 2016 definition is more elaborated and the word ‘agent’ has been used instead of person.

5.11 Edition

Table 5.11: Evolution of definitions of Edition

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
2 (RDC 4 1904)	A number of copies of a book published at the same time and in the same form.
3 (AA 1908)	The whole number of copies printed from the same set of types and issued at the same time.
4 (CCC 1934)	One of the different forms in which a literary work is published, either by the author himself, or by subsequent editors.
5 (ALA 1949)	One of the successive forms in which a literary text is issued, either by the author or by a subsequent editor.
6 (CCC 31951)	One of the different forms in which a literary work is published, either by the author himself, or by subsequent editors.

7 (CCC 5 1965)	1. One of the different printings or reproductions of a document with or without slight change in thought content, each being distinguished from the others, either numerically or some other equivalent terms such as 'New', 'Revised' and 'Enlarged'. 2. One of the different forms in which one and the same work is published, each form having a distinct name almost amounting to a proper noun, such as, Arden edition, Variorum edition etc.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	1. In case of books and book like materials, all those copies of an item produced from substantially the same type of image, whether by direct contact or by photographic methods. 2. In the case of non-book materials, all the copies of an item produced from one master copy and issued by a particular publishing agency or a group of such agencies.

5.11.1 Discussion

The first two definitions defined the concept as the 'copies' of the document published at the same time. These are confusing in contrary with our traditional concept of 'edition' which means a new publication of a document with addition or alteration.

CCC 1934 and ALA 1949 and CCC 1951 defined the term in the same sense by using the phrase 'forms' which probably means successive publications of a particular document.

CCC 1965 defined the term in two senses. The first as different printings and reproductions sense as stated above is very distinct and match to the traditional concept of 'edition'. This definition clearly states the possibility of successive editions like 2nd, 3rd, etc. and also the possibility of the same edition with revisions, enlargements and new additions.

The second definition defined the term in different ‘forms’ means the publication of the same document by different publishers in different physical form. CCC 5 used the term ‘distinctive edition’ for the purpose.

So CCC 5 first distinguished the concept of ‘edition’ in two distinct senses—one by printings and reproduction and another by physical outlook.

AACR 1978 defined the term separately for books and non-book materials. A new trend started from 1978 due to the flourishing of the production of non-book materials which are different from book like materials.

The later codes used the term edition with various homonyms distinguished by the qualifier of the document type like Edition: books, pamphlets, single sheet; Edition: computer files; Edition: electronic resource, etc.

So, the concept of edition diffused according to the type of publications in later times.

5.11.2 Inference

Three concepts are emphasized in the definitions—copies, forms and reproductions. At the latest definition, the ‘copy’ concept returned. In modern times the term edition is defined according to publications like, computer files, unpublished items, etc.

5.12 Editor

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Editor* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.12: Evolution of definitions of Editor

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
3 (AA 1908)	One who prepares, for publication, a work or collection of works not his own.

4 (CCC 1934)	One who prepares the literary works of another person or number of persons for publication by selecting, revising and arranging the material; also one who prepares an edition of any literary work.
5 (ALA 1949)	One who prepares for publication a work or collection of works or articles not his own. The editorial labour may be limited to the preparation of the matter for the printer, or it may include supervision of the printing, revision or elucidation of the text, and the addition of introduction, notes, and other critical matter.
6 (CCC 31951)	One who prepares the literary works of another person or number of persons for publication by selecting, revising and arranging the material; also one who prepares an edition of any literary work.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	One who prepares for publication a work or collection of works or articles not his own.
9 (AACR 1967NT)	One who prepares for publication a work or collection of works or articles not his own.
10 (AACR 21978)	One who prepares for publication an item not his own. The editorial labour may be limited to the preparation of the item for the manufacturer, or it may include supervision of manufacturing, revision or elucidation of the text, and the addition of an introduction, notes, and other critical matter.
11 (AACR 2R1988)	One who prepares for publication an item not his/her own. The editorial work may be limited to the preparation of the item for the manufacturer, or it may include supervision of the manufacturing, revision or elucidation of the content of the item.

12 (AACR 2R 2002)	One who prepares for publication an item not his own. The editorial labour may be limited to the preparation of the item for the manufacturer, or it may include supervision of the manufacturing, revision (restitution) or elucidation of the text, and the addition of an introduction, notes, and other critical matter. For certain works, it may involve the technical direction of a staff of persons engaged in writing or compiling the text.
13 (RDA 2016)	An agent contributing to an expression of a work by revising or clarifying the content, or by electing and putting together works, or parts of works, by one or more creators. Addition of an introduction, notes, or other critical matter, or preparing an expression of a work for production, publication, or distribution is included. Major revision, adaptation, etc., that substantially changes the nature and content of the original work, resulting in a new work, is excluded.

5.12.1 Discussion

AA 1908 defined the term as a person who just collects other's publication to be published collectively.

CCC1 1934 mentioned the activities of the editors distinctly, i.e., 'selecting', 'revising' and 'arranging' the documents.

ALA 1949 elucidates the ideas as the same as CCC1, but in more details.

AACR 1967 BT and NT defined the term as the same as AA1908.

AACR1978, 1988, 2002 have defined the term in a similar way by describing the activities of the editors.

RDA 2106 defined the term by mentioning which are ‘editorial’ activities and which are not.

As the time progresses, the definitions become more elaborative and distinguishing the ‘editorial’ works with those which are ‘non-editorial’.

5.12.2 Inference

This evolution of definitions of ‘Editor’ clearly indicates the changing roles of editors time to time.

5.13 Entry

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Entry* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.13: Evolution of definitions of Entry

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
1 (RDC 1876)	The registry of a book in the catalogue with the title and the imprint.
2 (RDC 4 1904)	The registry of a book in the catalogue with the title and the imprint.
3 (AA 1908)	The record of a book in a catalogue or a list.
4 (CCC1934)	A record about a work, i.e., a book or a periodical publication, in a catalogue.
5 (ALA 1949)	1. A record of a book in a catalogue or list. 2. The heading chosen for this record.
6 (CCC3 1951)	A record about a work, i.e., a book or a periodical publication, in a catalogue.
7 (CCC51965)	Ultimate unit-record in a catalogue or a documentation list.

8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1. A record of a bibliographical entity in a catalogue 2. Sometimes used to denote the aspect of cataloguing that is concerned with the choice of headings under which bibliographical entities are to be represented in a catalogue.
9 (AACR 1967NT)	1. A record of a bibliographical entity in a catalogue or list. 2. A heading under which a record of a bibliographical entity is represented in a catalogue or list; also in the case of a work entered under title, the title. 3. Sometimes used to denote the aspect of cataloguing that is concerned with the choice of entries under which bibliographical entities are to be represented in a catalogue.
10 (AACR2 1978)	A record of an item in a catalogue.
11 (AACR2R 1988)	A record of an item in a catalogue.
12 (AACR2R 2002)	A record of an item in a catalogue.

5.13.1 Discussion

The term has been used in 12 catalogue codes out of 13 under the study.

RDC1876, RDC 4 1904 defined the term as the registry of ‘book’. So in the first two codes the concept was treated as physical content of title and imprint related information, but later the concept was transformed in to an intellectual output containing bibliographical information. Though the terms Periodicals used in the glossary of RDC 4 1904, but surprisingly only the book s were considered in the definitions up to 1908.

CCC1 in 1934 included the periodicals in the definition of ‘entry’ for the first time.

ALA1949 first defined the term in two senses-one as a list of documents and another as the heading of a catalogue. This definition creates ambiguity as it does not define the term precisely.AACR1967 BT and NT also followed the same tradition.

Definition of CCC51965 is very brief and generalized by considering the entry as the ‘ultimate record’.

This tradition was followed in AACR 1978, 1988 and 2002 editions.

5.13.2 Inference

At the beginning stages, ‘registry’ concept was emphasized in the definitions. From 1908 ‘record’ concept was introduced. The 1967 definitions are quite elaborate. Other definitions are precise in nature.

5.14 Entry Word

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Entry word* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.14: Evolution of definitions of Entry word

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
3 (AA 1908)	The word by which the entry is arranged in the catalogue.
5 (ALA 1949)	The word by which the entry is arranged in the catalogue, usually the first word (other than the article) of the heading, which is also called filing word.
7 (CCC 5 1965)	The first word in an entry element.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	The word by which the entry is primarily arranged in the catalogue, usually the first word(other than an article) of the heading.

9 (AACR 1967 NT)	The word by which the entry is arranged in the catalogue, usually the first word (other than an article) of the heading.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	The word by which the entry is primarily arranged in the catalogue, usually the first word (other than an article) of the heading.
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	The word by which an entry is arranged in the catalogue, usually the first word (other than an article) of the heading.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	The word by which an entry is preliminarily arranged in the catalogue, usually the first word (other than an article) of the heading.

5.14.1 Discussion

The term ‘Entry word’ has been used by eight catalogue codes. All the definitions denote the word by which an entry is arranged in a catalogue (letter by letter or word by word).

ALA 1949 also gives the ‘quality’ of the entry word by excluding the initial articles. It has also mentioned a synonymous term, ‘filing word’, in the definition.

The term is valid for alphabetical catalogue only. CCC5 (1965) being a bipartite catalogue also defined the term as it is related to its alphabetical parts, i.e., index entries.

The definition remains almost unchanged from 1908 to 2002.

5.14.2 Inference

All the definitions emphasize on arrangement of entries in a catalogue. No change in the theme.

5.15 Half Title

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Half title* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.15: Evolution of definitions of Half title

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
3 (AA 1908)	A brief title, usually without author's name or imprint, printed on a leaf preceding the main title page.
4 (CCC1934)	The name of the book put on the leaf preceding the title page.
6 (CCC 31951)	The name of the book put on the leaf preceding the title page (Cutter).
7 (CCC 51965)	Title, usually short, given on the page of a printed book, usually found before the page containing the full title of the work contained in a book.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	A brief title of a publication appearing on a leaf preceding the title page.
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	A title of a publication appearing on a leaf preceding the title page.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	A brief title of a publication appearing on a leaf preceding the title page.

5.15.1 Discussion

The term used in seven catalogue codes under study.

The term is confusing because it means the half portion of the title literally but actually not.

All the definitions stated above have clearly mentioned the position of the half title. But not a single code mentioned the significances of the concept.

Two things are clear from the definitions, that Half titles are brief and appear on the page preceding the title page.

No such changes in the definitions.

5.15.2 Inference

All the definitions carry more or less the same statement from the beginning of catalogue codes under this study.

5.16 Heading

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Heading* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.16: Evolution of definitions of Heading

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
1 (RDC 1876)	The word by which the alphabetical place of an entry in the catalogue is determined, usually the name of the author, of the subject, or of the literary or practical form, or of a word of the title.
2 (RDC 4 1904)	The word by which the alphabetical place of an entry in the catalogue is determined, usually the name of the author, of the subject, or of the literary or practical form, or of a word of the title
3 (AA 1908)	The word or words by which the alphabetic place of an entry in the catalogue is determined, generally in the name of the author, the subject or the first word, not an article, of the title
5 (ALA 1949)	The name, word, or phrase used at the head of an entry to indicate some special aspect of the book(authorship, subject content, series, title, etc.) and thereby to bring together in the catalogue associated and allied material.
7 (CCC 1965)	The occupant of a heading section.

8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A name, word or phrase placed at the head of a catalogue entry for the purpose of fixing the place of the entry in the catalogue, b. Grouping related entries together.
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	1. A name, word or phrase placed at the head of a catalogue record to provide a point of access in the catalogue. 2. Sometimes used in descriptive cataloguing to denote the aspect concerned with uniform modes of representing the entries of persons and corporate bodies and the titles of works in heading.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	A name, word or phrase placed at the head of a catalogue entry to provide an access point in the catalogue.
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	A name, word, or phrase placed at the head of a catalogue entry to provide an access point.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	A name, word, or phrase placed at the head of a catalogue entry to provide an access point.

5.16.1 Discussion

The term has been used by 12 catalogue codes under study.

Two codes CCC 1 (1934) and CCC 3 (1951) used the term in the glossary but not defined and directed to the rules.

CCC5 though defined the term, but the definition has become a circular one as it used the term in definition also.

The other definitions mentioned the position of the ‘heading’ as well as the purpose of it.

Surprisingly, AACR1967 BT and NT defined the term in two separate manners. In the first case, two purposes were mentioned, but in the second case only one purpose is mentioned.

The theme of the concept not changed through the period of time started from 1876 to 2002.

5.16.2 Inference

All the definitions except CCC 5 (1965) bears almost same statement. CCC 5 not defined but stated the position of heading. CCC 1 and CCC3 used the term, but not defined, only described in rules.

5.17 Joint Author

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Joint author* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.17: Evolution of definitions of Joint author

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
3 (AA 1908)	A person who writes the book in collaboration with one or more associates, the portion written by each not usually being specified.
4 (CCC 1934)	Persons who write a work in collaboration with one another, the portion written by each not being distinct and not usually being specified.
5 (ALA 1949)	A person who collaborates with one or more associates to produce a work, in which the contribution of each is usually not separable from that of the others.
6 (CCC 3 1951)	Persons who write a work in collaboration with one another, the portion written by each not being distinct and not usually being specified.

7 (CCC 51965)	Two or more authors, personal or corporate, sharing responsibility for the thought and expression constituting the work, the position for which each is separately responsible not being either specified or separable.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A person who collaborates with one or more associates to produce a work in which the contribution of each is not separable from that of the others.
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	A person who collaborates with one or more associates to produce a work, in which the contribution of each is usually not separable from that of the others.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	A person who collaborates with one or more other persons to produce a work in relation to which the collaborators perform the same function.
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	A person who collaborates with one or more other persons to produce a work in relation to which the collaborators perform the same function.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	A person who collaborates with one or more other persons to produce a work in relation to which the collaborators perform the same function.

5.17.1 Discussion

The term first defined by AA1908. The concept of inseparable/ unspecified collaboration has been mentioned in the definitions until AACR1967(BT and NT). But from AACR 1978 onwards, the ‘inseparability’ concept remains unstated.

AACR 1967 BT and NT not emphasizes on writing the document but on collaboration of producing a work. So, these definitions increase the purview of the concept from writing to producing.

5.17.2 Inference

The last three definitions emphasize on performing the ‘same function’ but not restricting the type of function, i.e., authorship, editing, translating, etc. So, the scope of the concept increased as all types of joint collaborations are under the purview of the term Joint author.

5.18 Main Entry

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Main entry* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.18: Evolution of definitions of Main entry

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
2 (RDC 4 1904)	The full or principle entry; usually the author entry.
3 (AA 1908)	The full or principal entry, as a rule the author entry.
4 (CCC 1934)	It enters a work under the chief specific subject with which it deals. It is, as its name implies, the basic entry about a work. It gives us more information about the work than any other entry.
5 (ALA 1949)	1. The basic catalogue card, usually the author entry, giving all the information necessary to the complete identification of a work. This entry bears also the tracing of all other headings under which the work in question is entered in the catalogue. 2.The entry chosen for this main card, whether it be a personal or corporate name, the title of an anonymous work, a collection, composite work, periodical or serial, or a uniform title.

6 (CCC 3 1951)	It enters a work under the chief specific subject with which it deals. It is, as its name implies, the basic entry about a work. It gives us more information about the work than any other entry.
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Specific entry giving maximum information about the whole of a document. All the other entries-specific or general-relating to the document are normally derived from the main entry.
8(AACR 1967 BT)	The complete catalogue record of a bibliographical entity, presented in the form by which the entity is to be uniformly identified and cited.
9(AACR 1967 NT)	1. The complete catalogue record of a bibliographical entity, presented in the form by which the entity is to be uniformly identified and cited. 2. The heading under which such a record is represented in the catalogue or, if there is no heading, the title.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	The complete catalogue record of an item, presented in the form by which the entity is to be uniformly identified and cited. The main entry may include the tracings of all other headings under which the record is to be represented in the catalogue.
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	The complete catalogue record of an item, presented in the form by which the entity is to be uniformly identified and cited. The main entry may include the tracings.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	The complete catalogue record of an item, presented in the form by which the entity is to be uniformly identified and cited. The main entry may include the tracing of all other headings under which the record is to be represented in the catalogue.

5.18.1 Discussion

Almost all the definitions emphasize on the concept of full and detailed information in main entry. The first two definitions define the concept of Main entry as author entry. At that time, author was the most approached term for the users. These two definitions are the evidences of this fact. CCC1 and CCC3 mentioned clearly that a main entry is a subject entry. AACR 1967NT gives two definitions and as a result preciseness hampers. The inclusion of tracings is noticed at the definitions of AACR2R 1988 and AACR2R 2002.

5.18.2 Inference

The main theme of all definitions is ‘fullness’ or completeness of description. The definition is not available in recent codes like RDA, probably due to its irrelevancy in digital cataloguing environment where user does not bother with main or added entry rather, he/she search for any access point as per his/her choice.

5.19 Monograph

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Monograph* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.19: Evolution of definitions of Monograph

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
5 (ALA 1949)	A systematic and complete treatise on a particular subject, usually detailed in treatment but not extensive in scope. It need not be bibliographically independent.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A non-serial publication, either complete in one volume, or intended to be completed in a finite number of volumes.
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	A work, collection, or other writing that is not a serial.

10 (AACR 2 1978)	A non-serial item, i.e., an item either complete in one part or complete, or intended to be completed, in a finite number of separate parts.
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	A non-serial item, i.e., an item either complete in order in one part or complete, or intended to be completed, in a finite number of separate parts.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	A bibliographic resource that is complete in one part or intended to be completed within a finite number of parts.
13 (RDA 2016)	A resource that is complete in one part or intended to be completed within a finite number of parts.

5.19.1 Discussion

The term first defined in ALA 1949. This definition gives emphasis on the scope of the subject and discussion. The definitions of AACR give emphasis on the type of publication (i.e., non-serial) and also the number of volumes of monograph.

In the definitions of AACR2R2002 and RDA 2016 emphasis is given on resource rather than item.

The presence of the phrase ‘non-serial item’ make the definitions slightly negative in nature.

The scope and coverage of a monograph is clearly defined at the first definition only.

There is another concept treatise which is related to the systematic discussion of a broader subject and Monograph is slightly different from that mainly on the coverage of the subject.

But all other definitions, except the first one, do not mention this fact.

The evolution of the definitions shows that the difference between monograph and Treatise is gradually faded away.

It is also supported by the fact that there is no separate definition of Treatise in modern codes.

5.19.2 Inference

The first definition is restricted by a ‘particular subject’. Other definitions emphasized on completeness of the publication in one or more than one definite volume.

5.20 Periodical

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Periodical* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.20: Evolution of definitions of Periodical

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
2 (RDC 4 1904)	A work issued at intervals which are usually regular; it is generally written by many contributors.
3 (AA 1908)	A publication intended to appear in successive numbers or parts at more or less regular intervals and as a rule for an indefinite time. Each part properly contains matter on a variety of topics, generally by several contributors. Newspapers, memoirs, proceedings etc. are not considered regular periodicals under the rules (as note).
4 (CCC 1934)	A work is said to be a periodical: 1.It consists of many volumes, published periodically – in rare cases as wholes, but usually part by part, each part being called a number or an issue or a fascicule, etc. 2. All the volumes, with rare exceptions if at all, are made up of distinct, independent and coordinate contributions not forming a continuous exposition, by two or more personal authors

5 (ALA 1949)	A serial in parts which are not monograph and usually contain articles by several contributors. It generally has a distinctive title and the successive numbers or parts are intended to appear as stated or regular intervals and as a rule for an indefinite period.
6 (CCC 3 1951)	A work is said to be a periodical: 1. It consists of many volumes, published periodically – in rare cases as wholes, but usually part by part, each part being called a number or an issue or a fascicule, etc. 2. All the volumes, with rare exceptions if at all, are made up of distinct, independent and coordinate contributions not forming a continuous exposition, by two or more personal authors
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Periodical publication of which each volume is made up of distinct and independent contributions, not forming a continuous exposition, normally by two or more personal authors and normally the specific subjects and the authors of the contributions in successive volumes also being, in general, different.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A serial appearing or intended to appear indefinitely at regular or stated intervals, generally more frequently than annually, each issue of which normally contains separate articles, stories, or other writings.
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	A serial appearing or intended to appear indefinitely at regular or stated intervals, generally more frequently than annually, each issue of which normally contains separate articles, stories, or other writings.

5.20.1 Discussion

Definition of RDC 4 1904 gives emphasis on the frequency at regular intervals.

Definition of AA1908 also mentioned the regularity as well as several contributions.

CCC definitions of 1934 and 1951 give many conditions of being a periodical, but more or less has said the same idea as the previous two codes.

CCC 5(1965) also gives a comprehensive definition, but there is slight circularity in the definition as the phrase 'Periodical' itself is used in the definition.

ALA 1949, AACR 1967(BT and NT) used the term 'serial' at the definitions, though serial is a separate type of document also defined at the glossary of these codes.

5.20.2 Inference

Almost all the codes defined the concept in a similar way.

The term Periodical has not been found at later codes, as it was merged with the term Serial

5.21 Reference

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Reference* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.21: Evolution of definitions of Reference

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
1 (RDC 1876)	Partial registry of a book (omitting the imprint) under author, title, subject, or kind, referring to a more full entry under some other heading.
2 (RDC 1904)	Partial registry of a book (omitting the imprint) under author, title, subject, or kind, referring to a more full entry under some other heading.
3 (AA 1908)	A direction from one heading to another.
5 (ALA 1949)	A direction from one heading to another.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A direction from one heading or entry to another.
9 (AACR 1967NT)	A direction from one heading or entry to another.

10 (AACR 1978)	A direction from one heading or entry to another.
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	A direction from one heading or entry to another.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	A direction from one heading or entry to another.
13 (RDA 2016)	A direction from one access point to another.

5.21.1 Discussion

The first two definitions of RDC 1876 and 1904 are very clear and comprehensive that states the direction from an entry to another ‘fuller’ entry.

But other definitions are very generic and just define the concept from directing one heading to another.

5.21.2 Inference

No change in the traditional concept related to the term. The concept is still in use in this digital cataloguing environment.

5.22 Serial

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Serial* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.22: Evolution of definitions of Serial

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
2 (RDC 4 1904)	A publication issued in successive parts, usually at regular intervals, and continued indefinitely.
3 (AA1908)	A publication issued in successive parts, usually at regular intervals, and as a rule intended to be continued indefinitely. Serials include periodicals, annuals and memoirs, proceeding and transactions of the society.

4 (CCC 1934)	A work is said to be serial, if 1. A volume or a small group of volumes of it is published annually or at other definite intervals 2. All the volumes or all the periodical groups of volume give more or less similar information, mainly relating to its period of publication or to the period which forms their subjects in the case of archival publications..... 5. The work is not a periodical.
5 (ALA 1949)	A publication issued in successive parts, usually at regular intervals, and, as a rule, intended to be continued indefinitely.
6 (CCC 3 1951)	A work is said to be a serial, if 1. A volume or a small group of volumes of it is published annually or act other definite intervals. 2. All the volumes or all the periodical groups of volume give more or less similar information, mainly relating to its period of publication or to the period which forms their subjects in the case of archival publications... 5. the intention had been to continue the publication of the volumes forever.
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Periodical publication of which each volume or each periodical group of volumes embodies more or less the same kind of information, usually in the same pattern, mainly relating to its year (or other period of coverage).
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A publication issued in successive parts bearing numerical or chronological designations and intended to be continued indefinitely. Serials include periodicals, newspapers, annuals, journals, memoirs, proceedings, transactions, etc.

9 (AACR 1967 NT)	A publication issued in successive parts bearing numerical or chronological designations and intended to be continued indefinitely. Serials include periodicals, newspapers, annuals, journals, memoirs, proceedings, transactions, etc.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	A publication in any medium issued in successive parts bearing numerical or chronological designations and intended to be continued indefinitely. Serials include periodicals, newspapers, annuals, journals, memoirs, proceedings, transactions, etc.
11 (AACR 1988)	A publication in any medium issued in successive parts bearing numeric or chronological designation and intended to be continued indefinitely. Serials include periodicals; newspapers; annuals (reports, yearbooks, etc.); the journals, memoirs, proceedings, transactions, etc., of societies; and numbered monographic series.
12 (AACR 2002)	A continuing resource issued in succession of discrete parts, usually bearing numbering, that has no predetermined conclusions. Example of serial include journals, magazines, electronic journals, continuing directories.
13 (RDA 2016)	A publication issued in successive parts, usually at regular intervals, and continued indefinitely

5.22.1 Discussion

The term has been used by almost all catalogue codes under the study starting from 1904 to 2016. All the definitions emphasize on two things -successiveness and regular intervals. Definitions of CCC mentioned the frequency, preferably annual.

AACR family of codes (1967-2002) gives examples with the definition for clarity of the concept.

The definition of AACR2002 started with the phrase ‘continuing resource’ as the chapter 12 of that code. The term ‘Serial’ has been renamed as continuing resource.

5.22.2 Inference

The concept does not change, but the definitions changes slightly by wordings. All the definitions are elaborative. In later codes, the concept Periodical was merged with Serial.

5.23 Series

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Series* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.23: Evolution of definitions of Series

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
3 (AA 1908)	A number of volumes usually related to one another in subject or otherwise issued successively by a publisher as rule in uniform style, with a collective title which generally appears at the head of the title page, on the half title, or on the cover.
4 (CCC 1934)	Two or more books are set to belong to a series, if 1. They are issued successively by one publisher or by one corporate body, in a common form or uniform style and having some similarity of subject or purpose; 2. Each book has a distinct and independent title of its own; 3. All the volumes do not have a common index; 4. The name of the series appears in all or at least one of the book in the series; 5. All the book do not have the same class number.

5 (ALA 1949)	1. A number of separate works, usually related to one another in subject or otherwise. 2. Each of two or more volumes of essays, lectures, articles, or other writings, similar in character and issued in sequence. 3. A separately numbered sequence of volume s within a series or serial.
6 (CCC 3 1951)	Two or more books are set to belong to a series if 1. They are issued successively by one publisher or by one corporate body, in a common form or uniform style and having some similarity of subject or purpose; 2. Each book has a distinct and independent title of its own; 3. All the volumes do not have a common index; 4. The name of the series appears in all or at least one of the book in the series.
7 (CCC 5 1965)	A set of books, not constituting a multi-volumed books, and with the following attributes: 1. The books are issued, normally successively by one publisher or by one sponsoring body or person, usually in a uniform style, and having some similarity of subject or standard or purpose....

8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1. A number of separate works issued in succession and related to one another by the fact that each bears a collective title generally appearing at the head of the title page, on the half title, or on the cover; normally issued by the same publisher in a uniform style, frequently in a numerical sequence. Often termed 'monographic series'. 2. Each of two or more volumes of essays, lectures, articles, or other writings similar in character and issued in sequence. 3. A separately numbered sequence of volumes within a series or serial.
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	1. A number of separate works issued in succession and related to one another by the fact that each bears a collective title generally appearing at the head of the title page, on the half title, or on the cover; normally issued by the same publisher in a uniform style, frequently in a numerical sequence. Often termed 'monographic series'. 2. Each of two or more volumes of essays, lectures, articles, or other writings similar in character and issued in sequence.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	1. A group of separate items related to one another by the fact that each item bears, in addition to its own title proper, a collective title applying to the group as a whole. The individual items may or may not be number. 2. Each of two or more volumes of essays, lectures, articles or other writings, similar in character and issued in sequence. 3. A separately numbered sequence of volumes within a series or serial.

11 (AACR 2R 1988)	1. A group of separate items related to one another by the fact that each item bears, in addition to its own title proper, a collective title applying to the group as a whole. The individual items may or may not be numbered. 2. Each of two or more volumes of essays, lectures, articles, or other writings, similar in character and issued in sequence, e.g., Lowell's <i>Among my books</i>, second series. 3. A separately number sequence of volumes within a series or serial, e.g., <i>Notes and quires</i>, 1st series, 2nd series, etc.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	1. A group of separate items related to one another by the fact that each item bears, in addition to its own title proper, a collective title applying to the group as a whole. The individual items may or may not be numbered. 2. Each of two or more volumes of essays, lectures, articles, or other writings, similar in character and issued in sequence. 3. A separately numbered sequence of volumes within a series or serial.
13 (RDA 2016)	A group of separate manifestations related to one another by the fact that each manifestation bears, in addition to its own title proper, a collective title applying to the group as a whole with or without numbering or, a separately numbered sequence of volumes or issues within a series or serial.

5.23.1 Discussion

The term Series has been defined in 11 catalogue codes. In all definitions, series is treated as a set of documents having some similarities. Definitions of CCC (1934, 1951 and 1965) have assigned some conditions for belonging to a particular series rather than defining a series.

Another definition is found in AACR family that is a sequence of number within a series. Thus, the definitions in these cases lacks preciseness.

5.23.2 Inference

The concept relating to the term remains unchanged. The concept has been defined in many senses in a particular code, and as a result a set of definitions are found in the same code. The concept is defined in more or less the same in language. Definitions are elaborate. RDA2016 definition is the most generalized.

5.24 Title

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Title* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.24: Evolution of Definitions of Title

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
1 (RDC 1876)	In the broader sense, includes heading, title proper, and imprint ;in the narrower, in which it is thereafter used, it is the name of the book given by the author on the title page.
2 (RDC 4 1904)	In the broader sense, includes heading ,title proper, and imprint; in the narrower, in which it is thereafter used it is the name of the book given by the author on the title page
3 (AA 1908)	1.In the broad sense, the distinguishing name of any written production given on the title page, including the name of the author, editor, translator, the edition, etc. But excluding the imprint. 2.In the narrow sense, the title does not include the name of the author, editor, etc.
4 (CCC 1934)	The name of a book or a periodical publication, usually given on the title page.

5 (ALA 1949)	1. In the broad sense, the distinguishing name of any written production as given on the title page, including the name of the author, editor, translator, the edition, etc., but excluding the imprint. 2. In the narrow sense, the title does not include the name of the author, editor, etc.
6 (CCC 3 1951)	The name of a book or a periodical publication, usually given on the title page.
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Name of work.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1. In the broad sense, the name of a work, including any alternative title, subtitle, or other associated descriptive matter, but excluding the name of the author, editor, etc., unless the name forms a grammatically inseparable part of the title. 2. In the narrow sense, the name of a work, exclusive of any alternative title, subtitle, or other associated descriptive matter on the title page.
9 (AACR 1967NT)	1. In the broad sense, the name of a work, including any alternative title, subtitle, or other associated descriptive matter preceding the author, edition, or imprint statement on the title page. 2. In the narrow sense, the name of a work exclusive of any alternative title, subtitle, or other associated descriptive matter on the title page.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	A word, phrase, character, or group of characters normally appearing in an item, naming the item or the work contained in it.
11(AACR 2R 1988)	A word, phrase, character, or group of characters, normally appearing in an item, that names the item or the work contained in it.

12 (AACR 2R 2002)	A word phrase, character, or group of characters, normally appearing in an item, that names the item or the work contained in it.
13 (RDA 2016)	A word, character, or group of words or characters that names a manifestation or a work embodied in it.

5.24.1 Discussion

At the definitions of RDC 1 and 2, there are two senses. One is the information as printed on the title page, and another definition states the title itself. So, these codes defined the term in two senses. Though these two codes do not define Title page separately in their terminologies. Definitions of AA1908 and ALA1949 also defined in two senses, one the name of the publication with editor, translator, edition, etc. but excluding the imprint and another as the name of the item.

CCC 1 1934 is the first code that defined the Title as ‘the name of the book or periodical’.

AACR 1967BT and NT defined the term elaborately and more precisely by excluding the name of the author, editor, etc. It also defined the term in two sense-one with other title information and another the title proper only.

Later codes defined the term as the name of the item only.

5.24.2 Inference

The flavour of the definition changed. In earlier stages the definition covered the ideas of title page information like, author, collaborator, etc. and also the title itself. In this code, title page not defined separately. CCC 1 first defined the term as the name of the document. Later codes followed this same principle, though the statements of the definitions varied.

5.25 Title Page

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Title page* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.25: Evolution of definitions of Title Page

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
3 (AA 1908)	The page at the beginning of a book, on which is printed the title and imprint.
4 (CCC 1934)	The page at or near the beginning of a book (or a periodical publication), which bears the title and usually also the name of the author, compiler, or editor, the name of the publisher and the place and date of publication (NED).
5 (ALA 1949)	A page at the beginning of a book or work, bearing its full title and usually, though not necessarily, the Author's (editors etc.) name and the imprint. The leaf bearing the title page is commonly called the 'title page' although properly called also the 'title leaf'.
6 (CCC 3 1951)	The page at or near the beginning of a book (or a periodical publication), which bears the title and usually also the name of the author, compiler, or editor, the name of the publisher and the place and date of publication (NED).
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Page, of a document or a volume of it, containing its title statement. Usually, it also contains the author statement, the collaborator statement and the imprint. It also indicates the edition in many cases.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A page at the beginning of a publication, bearing its full title and usually, though not necessarily, the author's (editor's, etc.) name and the imprint. The leaf bearing the title page is commonly called the 'title page' although properly called the 'title leaf'.

9 (AACR 1967 NT)	A page at the beginning of a publication, bearing its full title and usually, though not necessarily, the author's name and the imprint. The leaf bearing the title page is commonly called the 'title page' although properly called the 'title leaf'.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	A page at the beginning of an item bearing the title proper and usually, though not necessarily, the statement of responsibility and the data relating to publication.
11(AACR 2R 1988)	A page at the beginning of an item bearing the title proper and usually, though not necessarily, the statement of responsibility and the data relating to publication. The leaf bearing the title page is commonly called the title page, although properly called the title leaf.
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	A page at the beginning of an item bearing the title proper and usually, through not necessarily, the statement of responsibility and the data relating to publication. The leaf bearing the title page is commonly called the title page, although properly called the title leaf.
13 (RDA 2016)	A page at the beginning of a manifestation bearing a title proper and usually, though not necessarily, a statement of responsibility and data relating to publication. Facing pages or pages on successive leaves containing this information with or without repetition are considered collectively as a title page

5.25.1 Discussion

The term has been defined in 11 catalogue codes under the study. All the definitions stated the position and the contents of the 'Title page'. AACR defined the term as 'Title page' but suggested the term Title leaf to be more appropriate. This is an indication that the title page is not a single page, but the recto and verso of a leaf. RDA 2016 defined the term as a 'collective' sense of many pages containing the information related to the title page, as stated in earlier definitions.

5.25.2 Inference

All the definitions are agreed to the presence of ‘title’ in the title page. But CCC tells the presence of other related information along with the title at the title page, but AACR make them optional. AACR make the confusion between title page and Title leaf. RDA considered the concept as a collection of more than one pages.

5.26 Translator

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Translator* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.26: Evolution of definitions of Translator

Code Number and Code Name	Definition
5 (ALA 1949)	One who renders from one language into another, or from an older form of a language into the modern form, more or less closely following the original.
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	One who renders from one language into another, or from an older form of a language into the modern form, more or less closely following the original.
9(AACR 1967 NT)	One who renders from one language into another, or from an older form of a language into the modern form, more or less closely following the original.
10 (AACR 2 1978)	One who renders from one language into another, or from an older form of a language into the modern form, more or less closely following the original.
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	One who renders from one language into another, or from an older form of a language into the modern form, more or less closely following the original.

12 (AACR 2R 2002)	One who renders from one language into another, or from an older form of a language into the modern form, more or less closely following the original.
13 (RDA 2016)	An agent contributing to an expression of a work by expressing the linguistic content of the work in a language different from that of previous expressions of the original work. Translation of linguistic content between forms of the same language from different time periods is included.

5.26.1 Discussion

The term first defined in code number 5. All the definitions emphasized on two transferring a concept from one language to another and from one form of a language to another form of the same language (e.g. old form to new form). All of them also emphasized that the original concept must be mentioned in the translated form.

5.26.2 Inference

The concept is defined in more or less the same in language. The last definition of RDA is more generalized by mentioning the term agent.

5.27 Volume

The evolution of the definitions of the term *Volume* in different catalogue codes are shown in the following table:

Table 5.27: Evolution of definitions of Volume

Code	Definition
1 (RDC 1876)	A book distinguished from other books or the volumes of the same work by having its own title, paging, and register.

2 (RDC 4 1904)	A book distinguished from other books or the volumes of the same work by having its own title, paging, and register.
3 (AA 1908)	1. A book distinguished from other books or from other parts of the same work by having its own title page and usually independent paging. 2. Whatever is contained in one binding.
4 (CCC 1934)	A written or printed work or portion of a work occupying several seats or leaves of paper or other substance fastened together to be opened at any particular place, the whole being protected by binding or covers of some kind.
5 (ALA 1949)	In the bibliographical sense, a book distinguished from other books or from other major divisions of the same work by having its own inclusive title page, half title, or portfolio title, and usually independent pagination, foliation, or register.
6 (CCC 3 1951)	A written or printed work or portion of a work occupying several seats or leaves of paper or other substance fastened together to be opened at any particular place, the whole being protected by binding or covers of some kind.
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Several leaves of paper or other material used for recording, either the whole or a part of the work, fastened together to be opened at any desired place.

8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1. In the bibliographical sense, a book distinguished from other books or from other major divisions of an edition of a work by having its own inclusive title page, half title, cover title, or portfolio title, and usually independent pagination, foliation, or register. 2. In the material sense, all that is contained in one binding, portfolio, etc., whether it be as originally issued or as bound after issue. The volume as a material unit may not coincide with the volume as a bibliographical unit. When a physical unit designated 'part' by the publisher is too large or too extensive to be bound with one or more others, it is called a volume in collation, but in contents and other notes, the publisher's designation is followed.
9 (AACR 1967 NT)	1. In the bibliographical sense, a book distinguished from other books or other major divisions of the same work by having its own inclusive title page, half title, cover title or portfolio title, and usually independent pagination, foliation, or register. 2. In the material sense, all that is contained in one binding, portfolio, etc. whether it be as originally issued or as bound after issue. The volume as a material unit may not coincide with the volume as a bibliographical unit. When a physical unit designated 'part' by the publisher is too large or too extensive to be bound with one or more others, it is called a volume in collation, but in contents and other notes, the publisher's designation is followed.

10 (AACR 2 1978)	1. In the bibliographical sense, a book distinguished from other books or other major divisions of the same work by having its own inclusive title page, half title, cover title or portfolio title, and usually independent pagination, foliation, or register. 2. In the material sense, all that is contained in one binding, portfolio, etc. whether it be as originally issued or as bound after issue. The volume as a material unit may not coincide with the volume as a bibliographical unit. When a physical designated 'part' by the publisher is too large or too extensive to be bound with one or more others, it is called a volume in collation, but in contents and other notes, the publisher's designation is followed.
11 (AACR 2R 1988)	1. In the bibliographic sense, a major division of a work, regardless of its designation by the publisher, distinguished from other major divisions of the same work by having its own inclusive title page, half title, cover title, or portfolio title, and usually independent pagination, foliation, or signature. The major bibliographic unit may include various title pages and/or paginations. 2. In the material sense, all that is contained in one binding, portfolio, etc. Whether as originally issued or as bound after issue. The volume as a material unit may not coincide with the volume as a bibliographic.

12 (AACR 2R 2002)	1. In the bibliographic sense, a major division of a work, regardless of its designation by the publisher, distinguished from other major divisions of the same work by having its own inclusive title page, half title, cover title, or portfolio title, and usually independent pagination, foliation, or signature. The major bibliographic unit may include various title pages and/or paginations. 2. In the material sense, all that is contained in one binding, portfolio, etc. Whether as originally issued or as bound after issue. The volume as a material unit may not coincide with the volume as a bibliographic unit.
13 (RDC 2016)	A carrier type consisting of one or more sheets bound or fastened together to form a single unit.

5.27.1 Discussion

The two earliest definitions of RDC1 and 2 defined the term as ‘books’ distinguished from its counterparts by own title page and paginations. This flavour of definition remains unchanged in AA1908, but including a new point of view with a separate definition of ‘the contains in one binding’. The second concept remains unchanged in CCC1 and 3. So up to this period the concept was treated as the collection of some leaves containing information for opening them in a convenient place. But CCC5 in 1965 defined the collection as the whole or part of a work. So, the ‘continuation of ideas’ concept started in the definition of Volume. AACRs follow the traditions of describing the concept in two senses-bibliographic which is the part of a particular work published separately and the materialistic sense which is as the contents of one binding or portfolio may be bound after the publication. Surprisingly the latest code RDA followed the definition of CCC 1 and 3 emphasizing the Volume as collection of several sheets bounded or fastened together.

5.27.2 Inference

The term defined in varieties of ways. First three definitions were based on ‘book’ concept. Definitions of CCC in 1934 and 1965 are more generalized indication of a complete work or portion of a work. AACRs described the concept in two senses- bibliographical and material, making the concepts more distinct. RDA defined the term in a more precise way.

5.28 Conclusion

After examining the definitions of 27 core terms in various catalogue codes, it is found that definitions in some cases changes linguistically, but the main theme remain unchanged. In some cases, definitions remain totally unchanged in subsequent codes, like the definitions of an added title page. Definitions become more elaborative with the time, e.g., the definitions of Alternative title. Definitions also in some cases become narrower in scope as the previous scope of the term were described by other terms and their definitions, e.g., definitions of author (Section 5.5). The main entity of the definition changed with time, but the statements are analogous. For example, definitions of Catalogue at the beginning described the ‘book’ as the main entity but at later stage books were replaced by ‘library materials’. In some cases, there are two or more definitions for a particular term, which challenges the preciseness of the concept – that is one of the essential characteristics of a technical definition. For example, definitions of Edition in AACR.

So, definitions are changed in most of the cases. These changes are the reflection of the fact that cataloguing is a dynamic subject. The occurrences of more than one definition of a particular term in a particular catalogue code are the proof of existence of varieties of characteristics related to a particular concept. Like natural sciences, one-to-one relationship between term and definition is not possible in cataloguing because the latter is social science and different point of views of different experts may be expressed by the same concept. Though it should be avoided, but in reality, cannot be avoided due to the varieties of thinking in different human minds.

Evaluation of Cataloguing Terminologies

Terminologies are constantly evolving. Over time, terms and their definitions change. Terminologies used in cataloguing are not an exception. Since Cutter (1876), we have observed changes in cataloguing terms as well as their definitions, across various catalogue codes. Using the canons/guiding principles established by the cataloguing authorities, the current study was conducted to investigate changes in cataloguing terminologies, that is, changes in terms and their definitions (please see, Chapter 3, Sec. No. 3.16.1 and 3.16.2). Evaluation of the terms was made based on seven criteria, namely Homonym-freeness (T1), Synonym-freeness (T2), Transparency (T3), Consistency (T4), Concreteness (T5), Native language preference (T6), and Linguistic economy (T7). Evaluation of definitions was made based on four criteria, viz. Conciseness (D1), Preciseness (D2), Positiveness (D3) and Non-circularity (D4). From nine carefully selected catalogue codes, a total of 27 core cataloguing terms and their 164 definitions had been gathered for the assessment.

Codes Covered under the Study:

Among 13 codes covered under the study, five prominent code families may be recognized as RDC family, AA family, CCC family, AACR family and RDA. By a judgmental sampling, the first and the last codes of each of these families were chosen for evaluation. The codes, thus chosen, are arranged alphabetically as follows:

1. Cutter, C. A. (1876). Rules for a printed dictionary catalogue. [RDC1] *Code1
2. Cutter, C. A. (1904). Rules for a dictionary catalogue (4th ed.). [RDC4] *Code 2
3. American Library Association. (1908). Cataloguing rules: author and title entries. [AA1908] * Code 3
4. American Library Association. (1949). A.L.A Cataloguing rules for author and title entries (2nd ed.). [ALA1949] *Code 5
5. Ranganathan, S.R. (1934). Classified catalogue code. [CCC1] *Code4
6. Ranganathan, S.R. (1965). Classified catalogue code with additional rules for dictionary catalogue code (5th ed.). [CCC5] *Code7
7. American Library Association. (1967). Anglo-American cataloguing rules (British text). [AACR 1 BT] *Code8
8. American Library Association. (2002). Anglo-American cataloguing rules (2nd ed., rev, 2003 update.). [AACR 2R 2002, 2003 update] *Code 12
9. Joint Steering Committee for Development of RDA. (2016). Resource description & access: RDA. [RDA 2016] *Code 13

6.1 Term- Added Entry

The evaluation scores of the Term ‘Added entry’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

** These numbers indicate the code serial number as assigned in Chap.1, Section 1.4.1.*

6.1.1 Evaluation of the term

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.1A.

Table 6.1A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Added Entry’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							#
2 (RDC1904)	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	6
3 (AA1908)	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	6
4 (CCC1 1934)	##							#
5 (ALA1949)	1	0	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	5
7 (CCC51965)	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	6
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	0	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	5
12 (AACR2R 2002)	1	0	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	5
13 (RDC 2016)	##							

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.1.1.1 Discussion

The term ‘Added entry’ has occurred in 7 catalogue codes out of 9 codes, chosen for evaluation.

Homonym freeness– The term is totally homonym free wherever it occurs. So T1 is always 1.

Synonym freeness– In three cases, ALA1949, AACR1967 BT and AACR2002, synonyms to the term are observed (the synonym is Secondary entry). So, in these three cases, the T2 is assigned as zero.

Transparency –The terms is slightly confusing to understand, as it may also mean any entry that has been ‘added’ to something. But in reality it is an additional entry complementing to the main entry. So T3 is assigned as 0.5.

Consistency –The term is subdivision of entry, and that is clear for the nomenclature. So, it is consistent with the term Entry and thus consistency maintained.

Concreteness –The term makes a partial impact on human mind about the concept it means. It would have been better to use the term as Subsidiary or Secondary entry (both are opposite word of main entry as per English dictionary) for better impact on human mind. So T5 partially maintained.

Native language preference and linguistic economy –The term is an English term and two worded. So, according to the criteria of evaluation, both these characteristics are fulfilled.

6.1.2 Evaluation of Definitions

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.1B.

Table 6.1B: Evaluation of the Definition of the Term ‘Added Entry’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
2 (RDC 4 1904)	A secondary entry, i.e. any other than a main entry.	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	2.5
3 (AA 1908)	A secondary entry, i.e. Any other than the main entry.	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	2.5
5 (ALA 1949)	A secondary entry, i.e. Any other than the main entry.	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	2.5
7 (CCC 5 1964)	Entry other than main entry.	0	0.5	0	1	1.5
8 (AACR 1 1967 BT)	An entry, additional to the main entry, by which a bibliographical entity is represented in a catalogue; a secondary entry.	1	1	1	1	4
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	An entry, additional to the main entry, by which an item is represented in a catalogue; a secondary entry.	1	1	1	1	4

6.1.2.1 Discussion

Conciseness– Definitions up to code number 5 are partly concise because they do not state the Added entry as additional to the main entry. Code number 7 the definition is too short and does not even mention the secondary characteristic of the concept. So, here, conciseness denied. From code number 8 onwards the conciseness in the definition fully maintained as these definitions stated all necessary characteristics of the Added entry.

Preciseness– Up to code number 7, the definitions are stated as the ‘non-main entries only and no touch of ‘additional’ entry. So, preciseness partly maintained. The later definitions are more accurate in conveying the concept more clearly.

Positiveness– Up to code number 5, the definitions are partly positive because the first part of these definitions is affirmative, but the second part is negative in the sense because it states the Added entry as ‘non-main entries. The later definitions are positive.

Non circularity –This characteristic is fully maintained in all the definitions.

6.1.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Added entry’ are found as follows:

Term – The highest score 6 out of 7 (85%) obtained by Codes 2, 3, 7 and 13.

Definition – The highest score 4 out of 4 (100%) obtained by Codes 8 and 12,

6.2 Term – Added Title Page

The evaluation scores of the Term ‘Added Title Page’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.2.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.2A.

Table 6.2A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Added Title Page’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC 1904)	##							
3 (AA 1908)	##							
4 (CCC1 1934)	##							
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	6
7 (CCC 5 1965)	##							
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	6
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	6
13 (RDC 2016)	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	6

##-Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.2.1.1 Discussion

Transparency and concreteness (T3 and T5) – The term lacks in transparency because it actually means an additional title page bearing more information or even a replica of the title page in another language differing from the language of the text of the book. It also lacks concreteness to some extent because Extra title page or Additional title page would have more concrete for human mind. Other criteria are fully satisfied.

6.2.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.2B.

Table 6.2B: Evaluation of the Definition of the Term ‘Added Title Page’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
5(ALA 1949)	A title page complementary to the one chosen for the main entry for the work.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
8(AACR 1 1967 BT)	A title page preceding or following the title page	1	0.5	1	1	3.5

	chosen as the basis for the description of the publication.					
12(AACR 2R 2002)	A title page preceding or following the title page chosen as the basis for the description of the item. It may be more general, (e.g. series title page), or equally general, (e.g. title page in another language).	1	1	1	1	4
13(RDA 2016)	A title page preceding or following the title page chosen as the preferred source of information. An added title page may be more general or equally general. A series title page is an example of a more general title page; a title page in another language is an example of an equally general title page.	1	1	1	1	4

6.2.2.1 Discussion

Definitions of all the codes where the term Added title page have been found are concise because they describe the concept to the point. But the definitions of ALA1949 and AACR1967 BT lack preciseness to some extent because they do not mention the nature of the Added title page with suitable examples. Other codes defined the concept with suitable examples so that no confusion can be created on user's mind and hence full preciseness occur in these codes (code 12 and 13).

6.2.3 Inference

The highest performance scores obtained by the term and the definitions of ‘Added title page’ are as follows:

The maximum score for a term obtained by all the codes in which it occurs, it is 6 out of 7, i.e., 85%.

For the definition, the highest score obtained by code number 12 and 13 which is 4 out of 4, i.e., 100%.

6. 3 Term – Alternative Title

The evaluation scores of the Term and definitions of ‘Alternative title’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.3.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.3A.

Table 6.3A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Alternative Title’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							Total
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC 1904)	##							
3 (AA 1908)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
4 (CCC1 1934)	##							
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
7 (CCC 5 1965)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
13 (RDC 2016)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7

##- Not occurred in the Code, NA-Not applicable

6.3.1.1 Discussion

The term has no synonym and homonym in any code under the study. The term is self-explanatory, and hence T3 completely satisfied. The term is also concrete because the word 'alternative' is very common and can create good Inference on human mind. So T5 is satisfied.

6.3.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.3B.

Table 6.3B: Evaluation of the Definitions of the Term 'Alternative Title'

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
3 (AA 1908)	A subtitle introduced by 'or' or its equivalent	1	1	1	1	4
5 (ALA 1949)	A subtitle introduced by 'or' or its equivalent					4
7 (CCC 5 1965)	A subtitle introduced by 'or' or its equivalent, and forming part of the title	1				4
8 (AACR 1 1967 BT)	A second title introduced by 'or' or its equivalent. For example, The Tempest or the Enchanted Island.		.5			3.5
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	The second part of a title proper that consists of two parts, each of which is a title; the parts are joined by the word 'or' or its equivalent in another language, e.g., The tempest, or, The Enchanted island					4

13(RDA 2016)	A second part of a title proper that consists of two parts, each of which has the form of an independent title, joined by a word such as ‘or’ or its equivalent in another language.					4
--------------	--	--	--	--	--	---

6.3.2.1 Discussion

The definition of 1967 BT lacks in preciseness to some extent because it used the phrase ‘second title’ which is confusing and not explaining the proper meaning of the term as Second title may convey the meaning of existence of another independent title but actually alternative title is a secondary part of the title proper.

6.3.3 Inference

The highest performance scores of the term and the definitions of ‘Alternative title’ are as follows:

The term Alternative tile has fulfilled all the criteria of an ideal term and hence obtained the highest marks 7 out of 7 (i.e., 100%) in all the codes where it occurs.

For the definition, it has also obtained the highest possible score of 4 out of 4 in all the codes which defined it, except the code number 8 (AACR 1 1967 BT).

6.4 Term- Atlas

The evaluation scores of the term ‘Atlas’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.4.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.4A.

Table 6.4A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Atlas’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T 1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							

2 (RDC 1904)	##							
3 (AA 1908)	##							
4 (CCC1 1934)	##							
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	0	NA	0.5	0	1	3.5
7 (CCC 5 1965)	##							
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	0	NA	0.5	0	1	3.5
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	1	1	0	NA	0.5	0	1	3.5
13 (RDC 2016)	1	1	0	NA	0.5	0	1	3.5

##- Not occurred in the Code, NA-Not applicable

6.4.1.1 Discussion

The term is totally synonym and homonym free. So T1 and T2 satisfy. But the term is not at all self-explanatory as its definition means. So, transparency truly denied. Though the concept related to the term (i.e., Collection of maps) term can be physically manifested but as the term may convey some other menacing as it popularly known as a Greek Mythological character. The word also originated from Greek and hence native language preference (T6) denied.

6.4.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.4B.

Table 6.4B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Atlas’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
5(ALA 1949)	A volume of maps, plates, engravings, tables, etc., with or without descriptive letterpress	1	1	1	1	4
8(AACR 1 1967 BT)	A volume of maps, plates, engravings, tables, etc., with or without descriptive letterpress	1	1	1	1	4

12(AACR 2R 2002)	A volume of maps, plates, engravings, tables, etc., with or without descriptive letterpress. It may be an independent publication, or it may have been issued to accompany one or more volumes of text.	1	1	1	1	4
13(RDA 2016)	A unit of extent that is a volume of maps or other cartographic content with or without descriptive text. This term applies to cartographic resources.	1	1	1	1	4

6.4.2.1 Discussion

Unlike the term, the definitions are brief, to the point and also describe the concept pinpointed. So, Conciseness and preciseness fully satisfied. There is no negativity and circularity found in the definitions.

6.4.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of 'Atlas' are found as follows:

All the codes where the term occurred, obtain the same score 3.5 out of 6 (58%) as Term score.

For the definition, all the codes obtained the highest possible score 4 (100%).

6.5 Term- Author

The evaluation scores of the term 'Author' and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.5.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term is shown in table 6.5A

Table 6.5A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Author’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	1	0	1	NA	1	1	1	5
2 (RDC 1904)	1	0	1	NA	1	1	1	5
3 (AA 1908)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
4 (CCC1 1934)	##							##
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
7 (CCC 5 1965)	##							##
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	##							##
13 (RDC 2016)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6

##- Not occurred in the Code, NA-Not applicable

6.5.1.1 Discussion

The term has been used in 7 catalogue codes as chosen for evaluation. In other codes, it has been replaced by Personal author or Corporate author.

Homonym freeness (T1) –The term is totally homonym free in all catalogue codes wherever it occurs.

Synonym freeness (T2) – In RDC codes the term Author has a synonym Editor as mentioned in the glossaries. So in these two cases synonym freeness hampered.

Transparency (T3) – The term is totally transparent as it is very well-known to everyone as the creator of the book.

Consistency (T4) – As author is not the subdivision of another broader term, so consistency is not applicable here.

Concreteness (T5) – The term is very concrete as it is capable of creating a clear perception in human mind as the writer (authority) of a document.

Native language preference and linguistic economy (T6 and T7) – this is an English term and single worded. So, these two criteria fully maintained.

6.5.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.5B.

Table 6.5B: Evaluation of the Definitions of the Term ‘Author’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
1(RDC 1876)	In the narrower sense is the person who writes a book; in a wider sense it may be applied to him who is the cause of the book's existence by putting together the writings of several authors	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
2 (RDC 4 1904)	In the narrower sense is the person who writes a book; in a wider sense it may be applied to him who is the cause of the book's existence by putting together the writings of several authors.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
3(AA 1908)	1. The writer of a book, as distinguished, from translator, editor, etc. 2. In a broader sense, the maker of the book or the person or body immediately responsible for its existence. Thus, a person who collects and put together the writings	0.5	0	1	1	2.5

	of several authors (compiler or editor) may be said to be the author of a collection. Corporate bodies may be considered the authors of publications issued in their name or by their authority					
5(ALA 1949)	1. The writer of a work, as distinguished from the translator, editor, etc. By extension, an artist, composer, photographer, cartographer, etc. 2. In the broader sense, the maker of the work or the person or body immediately responsible for its existence. Thus, a compiler or editor may be considered as author	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
8(AACR 1967 BT)	The person or corporate body chiefly responsible for the creation of the intellectual or artistic content of a work, e.g. the writer of a book, the compiler of a bibliography, the composer of a musical work, the artist who paints a picture, the photographer who takes a photograph, a corporate body reporting on its activities.	1	1	1	1	4
13(RDA 2016)	An agent responsible for creating a primarily textual work of content, regardless of media type or genre.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5

	Creation of a new work by paraphrasing, rewriting, or adapting works by another creator, if the modification has substantially changed the nature and content of the original or changed the medium of expression, is included.					
--	---	--	--	--	--	--

6.5.2.1 Discussion

Definition of RDC1876 (code 1) –There are two definitions in two separate senses. Both of them are partially concise because the totality of the concept is divided in two definitions and also as they define the same concept in two senses so preciseness hampers.

Definition of RDC 1904 (code 2) – Same as RDC1876.

Definition of AA1908 – Same as RDC1876 and RDC1904.

Definition of ALA1949– Same as RDC1876 and RDC1904.

Definition of AACR1967BT – This definition has described all possibilities of the concept in a brief but to the point way. So, it is fully concise. The only emphasis has been given on the responsibility of ‘creation of intellectual or artistic content’ and thus making the concept precise.

Definition of RDA2016 – This definition is too elaborate but accurate. So, conciseness partly maintained, but preciseness completely satisfied.

6.5.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Author’ are found as follows:

Term– The Highest score 6 (out of 6) i.e.,100% obtained by AA1908, ALA1949, AACR1967BT and RDA 2016 (code 3, 5,8,13 respectively).

Definition— The Highest score (4 out of 4) obtained by AACR1967BT (code 8).

6.6 Term-Binder's Title

The evaluation scores of the term *Binder's title* and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.6.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.6A.

Table 6.6A: Evaluation Score of the Term 'Binder's Title'

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							Total
	T 1	T2	T 3	T4	T5	T6	T7	
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
3 (AA1908)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
5 (ALA1949)	##							
7 (CCC51965)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
13 (RDC 2016)	##							

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.6.1.1 Discussion

The term Binder's title is self-explanatory having no synonym and homonym and also easy to understand and remember. So, all the seven criteria of term evaluation have been fulfilled by it.

6.6.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation score of the definitions of the term is shown in Table 6.6B.

Table 6.6B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Binder’s Title’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
2 (RDC 1904)	The title lettered on the binding of a book.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
3 (AA 1908)	The title lettered on the back of a book by the binders, as distinguished from the title on the publisher's original binding or cover.	1	1	1	1	4
4 (CCC 1 1934)	The title lettered on the binding of a book.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Short title, usually found tooled on the spine of a book.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	The title as supplied by the binder of a book.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
12 (AACR 2002)	A title lettered on the cover of an item by a binder, as distinguished from a title on the publisher’s original cover.	1	1	1	1	4

6.6.2.1 Discussion

Some definitions in codes 2, 4, 7 and 8 lacking preciseness, partially because either they do not state the position or the provider of the title. Otherwise, the definitions are concise and precise. No negativity and circularity found in the definitions.

6.6.3 Inference

The highest performance scores obtained by the term and the definitions of ‘Binder’s Title’ are as follows:

For the term all the codes in which it occurred, have obtained the highest possible score of 7 (100%), and for the definitions, codes 3 and 12 obtained the highest score of 4 out of 4 (100%).

6.7 Term – Catalogue

The evaluation score of the term ‘Catalogue’ and its definitions is shown in the following tables:

6.7.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term is shown in table 6.7A.

Table 6.7A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Catalogue’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							Total
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	1	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	5.5
3 (AA1908)	0	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	4.5
4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	5.5
5 (ALA1949)	1	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	5.5
7 (CCC51965)	##							
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	5.5
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	5.5
13 (RDC 2016)	1	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	5.5

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.7.1.1 Discussion

The term has been defined in 7 catalogue codes as chosen for evaluation. The term found to have no synonyms in all the codes.

The term is also homonym free, except in AA 1908, where the term Catalogue is distinguished by (of books) from its general meaning. In RDA 2016 the term Catalogue is distinguished by two qualifiers (work), (expression). These two are not topic qualifiers but only distinguish the two definitions in two FRBR senses (i.e., work,

expression, manifestation and item). Here the definition of Work sense has been chosen as it is more generalized. So, for RDA definition, homonym freeness is maintained.

6.7.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.7B

Table 6.7B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Catalogue’

Code	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
2 (RDC 1904)	A list of books which is arranged on some definite plan.	1	1	1	1	4
4 (CCC 1 1934)	List of works, i.e., books and periodical publications in some library or collection, prepared on some definite plan.	1	1	1	1	4
5 (ALA 1949)	A list of books, maps, etc. Arranged according to some definite plans.	1	1	1	1	4
8 (AACR 1 1967 BT)	A list of books or other library materials contained in a collection or a group of collections, arranged according to some definite plans.	1	1	1	1	4
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	1. A list of library materials contained in a collection, a library, or a group of libraries, arranged according to some definite plan. 2. In a wider sense, a list of materials prepared for a particular purpose, e.g., an exhibition catalogue, a sales catalogue.	1	0	1	1	3

13 (RDA 2016)	A work that consists of a complete enumeration of items arranged systematically.	1	1	1	1	4
---------------	--	---	---	---	---	---

6.7.2.1 Discussion

All the definitions under study fulfil the evaluation criteria satisfactorily. For the definition of AACR2002, the terms have been defined in two senses. Both the definitions are concise in nature but denied by the preciseness as they define two different things.

6.7.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Catalogue’ are found as follows:

Highest score is 5.5 out of 6, i.e., 91% obtained by the codes 2, 4, 5, 8, 12, and 13.

For definition – the highest score 4 out of 4, i.e., 100% obtained by the codes 2, 4, 5, 8 and 13.

6.8 Term– Collection

The evaluation of the term ‘Collection’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.8.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.8A.

Table 6.8A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Collection’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							Total
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC 1904)	##							
3 (AA 1908)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
4 (CCC1 1934)	##							
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6

7 (CCC 5 1965)	##							
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
13 (RDC 2016)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.8.1.1 Discussion

The term is totally synonym free and homonym free. It is also self-explanatory, and hence full transparency is achieved. Being a very common English term has capability of creating good impact on human mind about the concept. So, concreteness fully satisfied.

6.8.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term is shown in Table 6.8B.

Table 6.8B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Collection’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
3(AA 1908)	A number of works or parts of works considered as constituting a whole.	1	1	1	1	4
5(ALA 1949)	Three or more separate works or parts of works not forming a treatise or monograph on a single subject, combined and issued together as a whole.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
8(AACR 1967 BT)	If by one author :three or more independent works or parts of works published together; If by more than one author: two or more independent	0.5	0	1	1	2.5

	works or parts of works published together and not written for the same occasion or for the publication in hand.					
12(AACR 2R 2002)	1. Three or more independent works or parts of works published together. 2. Two or more independent works or parts of works by more than one author published together and not written for the same occasion or for the publication in hand.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
13(RDA 2016)	A group of resources assembled by an agent from a variety of sources.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5

6.8.2.1 Discussion

The definition of ALA 1949 is large to some extent, and hence conciseness hampered. There are two definitions in AACR 1967 BT and AACR 2002. So, preciseness denied. The definitions of these two codes are slightly longer. So, conciseness also partly maintained. On the other hand, the definition of RDA 2016 is very short. So, conciseness also hampered here.

6.8.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of 'Collection' are found as follows:

For terms, the highest score obtained by all the codes where the term occurs, which is 6 out of 6 (100%).

For definition, the highest score 4 out of 4 (100%) obtained by code number 3.

6.9 Term– Compiler

The evaluation of the term ‘Compiler’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.9.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.9A.

Table 6.9A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Compiler’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC 1904)	##							
3 (AA 1908)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
7 (CCC 5 1965)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
13 (RDC 2016)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

Code numbers 1 and 2 do not include the term in the glossary. In other codes, the term has fulfilled all the criteria. It is totally homonym free and synonym free (T1 and T2 fully maintained).

6.9.1.1 Discussion

The term is transparent because it conveys the ideas of the concept clearly (T3). As the term has no broader term, so consistency is not applicable (T4). The term is concrete because it describes the role of compilation which make good perception on human mind (T5). The term is in English and single worded, So, T6 and T7 are also satisfied.

6.9.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term is shown in Table 6.9B.

Table 6.9B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Compiler’

Code Name and Code Number	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
3 (AA 1908)	One who produces a work by collecting and putting together a written or printed matter from various sources.	1	1	1	1	4
4 (CCC 1 1934)	One who makes a written or printed work by arrangement of materials collected from various written or printed sources. In modern usage, opposed to personal author.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
5 (ALA 1949)	One who produces a work by collecting and putting together written or printed matter from the works of various authors. Also, one who chooses and combines into one work selections or quotations from one author	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Author, personal or corporate, making up a work by collecting information from various sources and arranging them in a particular way.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5

8 (AACR 1967 BT)	One who produces a work or collection by collecting and putting together written or printed matter from the works of various authors. Also, one who chooses and combines into one work selections or quotations from one author.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	1. One who produces a collection by selecting and putting together matter from the works of various persons or bodies. 2. One who selects and puts together in one publication matter from the works of one person or body.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
13 (RDA 2016)	An agent responsible for creating a new work such as a bibliography or a directory by selecting, arranging, aggregating, and editing data, information, etc. Revising or clarifying the content, selecting and putting together works or parts of work, by one or more creators is excluded.	0	1	1	1	3

6.9.2.1 Discussion

Code 3 defined the concept concisely and precisely.

Code 4 defined the term concisely. But it used another aspect ‘opposed to personal author’. Here preciseness partially maintained.

Code 5 used the concept in two senses-the first one is related to the collection of various authors, and the second one is related to the collection of one author. It is confusing. So, conciseness partially maintained but preciseness denied.

In Code 7, the definition is concise. But it used ‘Author’ as compiler, which is confusing. So, preciseness partially denied.

Codes 8 and 12 follow the same as in Code 5.

Code 13 has made the definition too long. So, conciseness hampers. But the definition is precise, as it clarifies the separation between editor and compiler.

6.9.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Compiler’ are found as follows:

Highest score for the term evaluation is 6 out of 6 (100%) obtained by all the codes in which it occurred. For definition, the highest score 4 out of 4 (100%) obtained by code number 3, i.e., AA1908.

6.10 Term Corporate Body

The evaluation of the term ‘Corporate body’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.10.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.10A.

Table 6.10A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Corporate body’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	##							
3 (AA1908)	##							
4 (CCC 1 1934)	1	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	5.5
5 (ALA 1949)	##							
7 (CCC 5 1965)	1	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	5.5
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	5.5
12 (AACR 2002)	1	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	5.5
13 (RDC 2016)	1	1	0.5	NA	1	1	1	5.5

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.10.1.1 Discussion

The term is totally free from synonym and homonym in all the codes under evaluation study. The criteria T3 Transparency (score 0.5) is partially maintained as the term actually means the corporate authorship, but the phrase body is somehow confusing. T4 is not applicable because it is not a part of the term Body. The term is totally concrete as it creates a clear idea of a corporate, especially institution on the human mind at its first look. This is an English term and two worded. So T6 and T7 completely fulfilled.

6.10.2 Definition evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.10B.

Table 6.10B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Corporate body’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
4 (CCC 1 1934)	A number of persons taken collectively, usually as united and organized in a common	1	1	1	1	4

	cause or for common action					
7 (CCC 5 1965)	1A number of persons taken collectively- usually a united or organized, or coming together informally in a common cause or for a common action. 2. A number of corporate bodies taken collectively- usually a united or organized, or coming together informally in a common cause or for a common action.	1	0	1	0.5	2.5
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	An organization or group of persons that is identified by a name and that acts or may act as an entity.	1	1	1	1	4
12 (AACR 2002)	An organization or group of persons that is identified by a particular name and that acts, or may act, as an entity. Typical examples of corporate bodies are associations, institutions, business firms, non-profit enterprises, governments, government agencies, religious bodies, local churches, and conferences.	1	1	1	1	4
13 (RDA 2016)	1. A corporate body of which a person is a member. 2. An organization or group of persons and/or organizations that is identified by a particular name and that acts, or may act, as a unit.	0.5	0	1	0.5	2

6.10.2.1 Discussion

The first definition of CCC 1934 has fulfilled all the criteria completely. The definition is clear and to the point. There is no chance of negativity and circularity. The same analysis is applicable for AACR2002 and AACR1967 BT. In CCC 5 1965 there are two definitions, both are concise but as they defined the concept in two different ways so accuracy and preciseness are denied. There are also certain peculiarities as the term ‘Corporate body’ which has been used in the second definition. For RDA 2016, the same analysis may be applicable. The second definition of RDA 2016 is slightly lengthy, and hence conciseness partly maintained.

6.10.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Corporate body’ are found as follows:

Highest score 5.5 out of 6 (91.66%) obtained by the codes 4, 7,8,12 and13.

Definition – The Highest score 4 out of 4 (100%) obtained by code 4, 8 and12.

6.11 Term Edition

The evaluation of the term ‘Edition’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.11.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.11A

Table 6.11A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Edition’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							Total
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
3 (AA1908)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
5 (ALA1949)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
7 (CCC51965)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
8 (AACR1967BT)	##							
12 (AACR2002)	##							
13 (RDC 2016)	##							

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.11.1.1 Discussion

The term edition has been defined in 5 codes as chosen for evaluation. The term was defined with different qualifiers related to forms in some catalogue codes (Code 12 and some others) (like Edition: unpublished items, etc.), but as they were very few (occurrence percentage below 50) so not considered for the evaluation. Only the term Edition is considered for evaluation.

6.11.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.11B.

Table 6.11B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Edition’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
2 (RDC 1904)	A number of copies of a book published at the same time and in the same form.	1	0	1	1	3
3(AA 1908)	The whole number of copies printed from the same set of types and issued at the same time.	1	0	1	1	3
4(CCC 1 1934)	One of the different forms in which a literary work is published, either by the author himself, or by subsequent editors	1	1	1	1	4
5(ALA 1949)	One of the successive forms in which a literary text is issued, either by the author or by a subsequent editor.	1	1	1	1	4
7(CCC 5 1965)	1.One of the different printings or reproductions of a document with or without slight change in thought content, each being distinguished from the others, either numerically	1	0	1	1	3

	or some other equivalent terms such as ‘New’, ‘Revised’ and ‘Enlarged’. 2. One of the different forms in which one and the same work is published, each form having a distinct name almost amounting to a proper noun – such as Arden edition, Variorum edition etc.					
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

6.11.2.1 Discussion

The first two definitions are concise in nature but lack the accuracy as both of these indicate edition as number of copies only which is different as the traditional meaning of edition. Definitions of code 4 and 5 are very concise as well as precise as they clearly state the idea of edition matched with the actual concept. Definitions of code 7 are concise, but as there are two separate definitions for the same concept, so preciseness hampers.

6.11.3. Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Edition’ are found as follows:

Highest score for the term is 6 out of 6 (100%) obtained all the catalogue codes 2, 3, 4, 5, 7 in which the term occurs.

The highest score for the definitions is 4 out of 4 (100%) obtained by codes 4 and 5.

6.12 Editor

The evaluation of the term ‘Editor’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.12.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.12A.

Table 6.12A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Editor’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							Total
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	##							
3 (AA1908)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
5 (ALA1949)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
13 (RDC 2016)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.12.1.1 Discussion

Synonym freeness and Homonym freeness (T1 and T2) - In all the cases where the term ‘Editor’ is used as preferred term, there are no synonym or homonym. So, the synonym freeness and homonym freeness completely maintained.

Transparency (T3) – The term is transparent as it describes the role of a particular job, i.e., edition. So, transparency maintained.

Consistency (T4) – As the term is not derived from a host term, so constituency is not applicable here.

Concreteness (T5) – As it describes a particular job, so it has a clear impact on human mind, so Concreteness fully maintained.

Native language preference (T6) – It is an English term. So native language preference is fully maintained

Linguistic economy (T7) – The term is single worded, so linguistic economy is maintained.

6.12.2 Evaluation of the Definitions

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.12B.

Table 6.12B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Editor’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
3 (AA 1908)	One who prepares, for publication, a work or collection of works not his own.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
4 (CCC 1 1934)	One who prepares the literary works of another person or number of persons for publication by selecting, revising and arranging the material; also one who prepares an edition of any literary work.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
5 (ALA 1949)	One who prepares for publication a work or collection of works or articles not his own. The editorial labour may be limited to the preparation of the matter for the printer, or it may include supervision of the printing, revision or elucidation of the text, and the addition of introduction, notes, and other critical matter.	0	1	1	1	3
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	One who prepares for publication a work or collection of works or articles not his own.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
12 (AACR 2002)	One who prepares for publication an item not his own. The editorial labour may be limited to the preparation of the item for the manufacturer, or it may include supervision of the manufacturing, revision (restitution) or elucidation of the text, and the addition of an introduction, notes, and	0	1	1	1	3

	other critical matter. For certain works, it may involve the technical direction of a staff of persons engaged in writing or compiling the text.					
13 (RDA 2016)	An agent contributing to an expression of a work by revising or clarifying the content, or by electing and putting together works, or parts of works, by one or more creators. Addition of an introduction, notes, or other critical matter, or preparing an expression of a work for production, publication, or distribution is included. Major revision, adaptation, etc., that substantially changes the nature and content of the original work, resulting in a new work, is excluded.	0	1	1	1	3

6.12.2.1 Discussion

For AA1908, the definition is brief and to the point. So, conciseness maintained. But in the definition, the activities of the editor are not mentioned. So, accuracy slightly hampers.

CCC 1934 started with a concise definition by mentioning the activities of editor, but at the same time it gives another definition of the maker of an edition that ultimately reduces the conciseness and preciseness also denied.

In ALA 1949, the definition is too lengthy, but all the necessary components of the concept of ‘editor’ are mentioned. So, conciseness denied and preciseness fully maintained.

AACR 1967 BT also comes under the same analysis as AA 1908.

AACR 2002 also follows the same type of definition as followed by ALA 1949.

RDA 2016 defined the concept in a lengthy way. It unnecessarily mentioned the exclusions of editorial activities, which makes the definition slightly negative. In this definition the conciseness denied, but preciseness maintained if we restrict to the first part of the definition.

6.12.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Editor’ are found as follows:

For terms, the highest score 6 (100%) obtained by all the codes where the term occurs.

For the definition, the highest score obtained code 3 and 8 which is 3.5 out of 4(87.5%).

6.13 Term- Entry

The evaluation of the term ‘Entry’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.13.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.13A.

Table 6.13A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Entry’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
2 (RDC1904)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
3 (AA1908)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
5 (ALA1949)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
7 (CCC51965)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
13 (RDA2016)	##							

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.13.1.1 Discussion

The terms Entry occurs in eight catalogue codes as selected for evaluation.

The term is totally free from synonyms and homonyms.

The term is partly transparent because it conveys the concept of the unit of a catalogue as well and the entrance in general.

The consistency is not applicable in this case because it has no broader term, and hence contextualizing with the broader term is not applicable.

The term is partly concrete because the concept denoted by it is visible, but perception may be created as the entry point of any entity like home, etc.

The term is an English term, so the native language preference maintained.

As the term is single worded, so linguistic economy fully maintained.

6.13.2 Evaluation of Definitions

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.13B.

Table 6.13B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Entry’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	The registry of a book in the catalogue with the title and the imprint.	1	1	1	1	4
2 (RDC 1904)	The registry of a book in the catalogue with the title and the imprint.	1	1	1	1	4
3 (AA 1908)	The record of a book in a catalogue or a list.	1	1	1	1	4
4 (CCC 1 1934)	A record about a work, i.e. a	1	1	1	1	4

	book or a periodical publication, in a catalogue.					
5 (ALA 1949)	1. A record of a book in a catalogue or list. 2. The heading chosen for this record.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Ultimate unit-record in a catalogue or a documentation list.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1. A record of a bibliographical entity in a catalogue. 2. Sometimes used to denote the aspect of cataloguing that is concerned with the choice of headings under which bibliographical entities are to be represented in a catalogue.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
12 (AACR 2003)	A record of an item in a catalogue.	1	1	1	1	4

6.13.2.1 Discussion

Up to first four catalogue codes, the definitions are fully concise and precise.

For ALA 1949, the term is defined in two ways. The first definitions are brief and to-the-point. But the second definition is dependent on the first. So, it is considered as partly concise. As the two definitions indicate two separate entities, so preciseness denied.

CCC5 (1965) defined the term with full preciseness, but the definition is too small and thus conciseness partly maintained.

AACR1967BT have two definitions for the term. The first one is concise, but the second one is too long. So overall, conciseness hampers. Two definitions are in two separate senses. So, preciseness denied.

AACR2002 definition has fulfilled all four criteria.

6.13.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of 'Entry' are found as follows:

Highest score for term is 5 out of 6 (83.33%) obtained by all the codes-1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 12, 13. Highest score for definition is 4 out of 4 obtained by 5 codes.

6.14 Term- Entry Word

The evaluation of the term 'Entry word' and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.14.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.14A.

Table 6.14A: Evaluation Score of the Term 'Entry word'

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	##							
3 (AA1908)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
4 (CCC1 1934)	##							##
5 (ALA1949)	1	0	1	NA	1	1	1	5
7 (CCC51965)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
13 (RDA2016)	##							

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

14.1.1 Discussion

T1 – There is no homonym found for the term Entry word. So T1 fully satisfied.

T2 – In code no. 5 (ALA1949) a synonymous term filing word is referred to Entry word. So, Synonym freeness is denied.

T3 – The word refers to a concept of a word used for entry in something, here into a document at the time of searching. So T3 totally satisfied.

T4 – Though it seems to be a subdivision of Word, but there is no such term in cataloguing as Word. So, Entry word is not a subdivision of word.

T5 – This a very sharp term to remember and also create a good Inference on human mind. So, Concreteness satisfied.

6.14.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.14B.

Table 6.14B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Entry word’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
3 (AA 1908)	The word by which the entry is arranged in the catalogue.	1	1	1	1	4
5 (ALA 1949)	The word by which the entry is arranged in the catalogue, Usually the first word (other than the article) of the heading. Also called filing word.	1	1	1	1	4
7 (CCC 5 1965)	The first word in an entry element.	0.5	0.5	1	1	3
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	The word by which the entry is primarily arranged in the catalogue, usually the first	1	1	1	1	4

	word (other than an article) of the heading.					
12 (AACR 2002)	The word by which an entry is preliminarily arranged in the catalogue, usually the first word (other than an article) of the heading.	1	1	1	1	4

6.14.2.1 Discussion

In the definition of CCC 5 1965 the definition is too short, and it also does not state the role of the entry word in any way. Thus, both conciseness and preciseness partially hampered. All other definitions are to the point and clear. No negativity or circularity found.

6.14.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of 'Entry word' are found as follows:

For term the highest score 6 out of 6(100%) obtained by code 3, 7,8,12

For definition highest score4 (100%) obtained by 3, 5,8,12

6.15 Term – Half Title

The evaluation of the term 'Half title' and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.15.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.15A.

Table 6.15A: Evaluation Score of the Term 'Half Title'

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	##							
3 (AA1908)	1	0	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	5

4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	6
5 (ALA1949)	##							
7 (CCC51965)	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	6
8 (AACR1967BT)	##							
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	0.5	1	0.5	1	1	6
13 (RDA2016)	##							

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.15.1.1 Discussion

In AA 1908, Half title has a synonym, Bastard title. So, it is not synonym free. Transparency and Concreteness (T3 and T5) partially maintained because Half title actually means the Short title or brief title which is not conveyed by the term Half title which may convey the concept of half, i.e., 50% of the title.

6.15.2 Definition evaluation

The evaluation score of the definitions of the term is shown in table 6.15B.

Table 6.15B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Half Title’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
3 (AA 1908)	A brief title, usually without author's name or imprint, printed on a leaf preceding the main title page.	1	1	1	1	4
4 (CCC 1 1934)	The name of the book put on the leaf preceding the title page.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Title, usually short, given on the page of a printed book, usually found before the page containing the full title of the work contained in a book.	1	1	1	1	4
12 (AACR 2002)	A brief title of a publication appearing on a leaf preceding the title page.	1	1	1	1	4

6.15.2.1 Discussion

In the definition of CCC1934, the preciseness partly hampers because it does not use the term short or brief in the statement. So, preciseness partly maintained here.

6.15.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Half title’ are found as follows:

For terms, the highest marks 6 (85.7%) obtained by the codes 4, 7 and 12.

For the definition the highest marks 4 (100%) obtained by the codes 3, 7, 12.

6.16 Term- Heading

The evaluation of the term ‘Heading’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.16.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.16A.

Table 6.16A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Heading’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
2 (RDC1904)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
3 (AA 1908)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
4 (CCC 1 1934)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
7 (CCC 5 1965)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
12 (AACR 2002)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
13 (RDA 2016)	##							

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.16.1.1 Discussion

The term Heading has no synonyms and homonyms in the selected code. So T1 and T2 fully maintained.

The term is transparent because it denotes the position (i.e., on the head of an entry). So T3 fully maintained.

As the term has no broader term, so consistency (T4) not applicable.

The term is concrete because it creates a clear perception on human mind as it describes the location clearly. So T5 fully maintained.

This is an English term. So native language preferred, and T6 satisfied.

This is a single worded term, so linguistic economy maintained.

6.16.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term is shown in table 6.16B.

Table 6.16B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Heading’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	The word by which the alphabetical place of an entry in the catalogue is determined, usually the name of the author, of the subject, or of the literary or practical form, or of a word of the title.	0.5	0.5	1	1	3
2 (RDC 1904)	The word by which the alphabetical place of an entry in the catalogue is determined, usually the name of the author,	0.5	0.5	1	1	3

	of the subject, or of the literary or practical form, or of a word of the title					
3 (AA 1908)	The word or words by which the alphabetic place of an entry in the catalogue is determined, generally for the author, the subject or the first word, not an article, of the title.	0.5	0.5	1	1	3
4 (CCC 1 1934)	NA No definition provided, only referred to rule.					
5 (ALA 1949)	The name, word, or phrase used at the head of an entry to indicate some special aspect of the book (authorship, subject content, series, title, etc.) and thereby to bring together in the catalogue associated and allied material.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
7 (CCC 5 1965)	The occupant of a heading section.	0	0	1	0	1
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A name, word or phrase placed at the head of a catalogue entry for: (a) Fixing the place of the entry in the catalogue, (b) Grouping related entries together.	1	1	1	1	4
12 (AACR 2002)	A name, word, or phrase placed at the head of a catalogue entry to provide an access point.	1	1	1	1	4

6.16.2.1 Discussion

Code no. 1 and 2 defined the term too broad and not mentioned the position of the entity (i.e., Head of an entry). So, conciseness and preciseness partially maintained.

Code no. 3 also followed the same principle of definition.

Code no. 4 used the term in the glossary, but referred to rule for its description only.

Code no. 5 defined the term slightly longer, but it mentions the position by making the definition accurate.

Code no.7 defined the terms too briefly and not clearly. The definition is also circular because the word 'heading' itself is used in the definition.

Code no. 8 and code 12 defined the term as per the evaluation criteria fulfilling all the four components.

6.16.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of 'Heading' are found as follows:

For term, the highest score, 6 out of 6 obtained by the codes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8 and 12.

For definition, the highest score 4 out of 4 obtained by two codes - 8 and 12.

6.17 Term – Joint Author

The evaluation of the term 'Joint author' and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.17.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.17A.

Table 6.17A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Joint Author’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	##							
3 (AA1908)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
5 (ALA1949)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
7 (CCC51965)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
13 (RDA2016)	##							

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.17.1.1 Discussion

Homonym freeness (T1) – The term has no homonym as found in the codes under study. So, it is totally homonym free.

Synonym freeness (T2) – No synonym(s) found for the term ‘Joint author’ so it is synonym free and obtained the score 1.

Transparency (T3) – The term is transparent because it clearly indicates the concept what it is meant for. So full score 1 is assigned.

Consistency (T4) – The term is a subdivision of the term ‘Author’ and it is indicated by its naming. So, total consistency maintained.

Concreteness (T5) – The term is concrete because it is clearly perceptible and creates a good impact on human mind. So, concreteness maintained.

Native language preference (T6) – This is an English term, so native language is preferred in this case.

Linguistic economy (T7) – It is a two-worded term and as per the evaluation principles it obtains full score here.

6.17.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.17B.

Table 6.17B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Joint author’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
3 (AA 1908)	A person who writes the book in collaboration with one or more associates, the portion written by each not usually being specified.	1	1	1	1	4
4 (CCC 1 1934)	Persons who write a work in collaboration with one another, the portion written by each not being distinct and not usually being specified.	1	1	1	1	4
5 (ALA 1949)	A person who collaborates with one or more associates to produce a work, in which the contribution of each is usually not separable from that of the others.	1	1	1	1	4
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Two or more authors, personal or corporate, sharing responsibility for the thought and expression constituting the work, the position for which each is separately responsible not being either specified or separable.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
8 (AACR 1967BT)	A person who collaborates with one or more associates to produce a work in which the contribution of each is not	1	1	1	1	4

	separable from that of the others.					
12 (AACR 2002)	A person who collaborates with one or more other persons to produce a work in relation to which the collaborator performs the same function.	1	1	1	1	4

6.17.2.1 Discussion

In AA1908, the definition clearly mentions the collaborative role of ‘Joint author’ with other authors and also mentioned the unspecified role of each author associated with the work. This definition is fully concise and precise.

CCC1 1934 defined the concept almost at the same language as by AA1908. It has also fulfilled all the characteristics of the definition.

CCC5 1965 included the concept of corporate author that makes the concept more precise. But as the definition is slightly longer than the previous code by the use of complex sentences, so conciseness suffers.

Other definitions by the later codes are fulfilling all the necessary criteria.

6.17.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Joint author’ are found as follows:

Highest score for term is 7 out of 7 (100%) obtained by the codes 3, 4, 5, 7, 8 and 12.

For definitions, the highest score is 4 (100%) obtained by 5 codes-3, 4, 5, 8 and 12.

6.18 Term – Main Entry

The evaluation of the term ‘Main entry’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.18.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.18A.

Table 6.18A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Main entry’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							Total
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	
1 (RDC 1876)	##							##
2 (RDC1904)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
3 (AA1908)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
5 (ALA1949)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
7 (CCC51965)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
13 (RDA2016)	##							##

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.18.1.1 Discussion

The term obtains equal marks in all the codes. It is totally free from synonyms and homonyms (T1 and T2 satisfied).

The term is transparent because it denotes the prime entry of a catalogue. So, T3 satisfied.

Main entry is a division of Entry, which is clear from the nomenclature. So, it is consistent with the mother term (T4).

The term is concrete because the idea of ‘main’ makes a clear conception of the entity what it describes (T5).

It is a two-worded English term. So, Native language is preferred here and economy maintained (T6 and T7).

6.18.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation score of the definitions of the term is shown in Table 6.18B.

Table 6.18B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Main Entry’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
2 (RDC 1904)	The full or principal entry; usually the author entry.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
3 (AA 1908)	The full or principal entry, as a rule, the author entry.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
4 (CCC 1 1934)	It enters a work under the chief specific subject with which it deals. It is, as its name implies, the basic entry about a work. It provides us more information about the work than any other entry.	0.5	0.5	1	1	3
5 (ALA 1949)	1.The basic catalogue card, usually the author entry, giving all the information necessary to the complete identification of a work. This entry also bears the tracing of all other headings under which the work in question is entered in the catalogue. 2.The entry chosen for this main card, whether it be a personal or corporate name, the title of an anonymous work, a collection, composite work	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Specific entry providing maximum information about the whole of a document. All the	0.5	1	1	1	3.5

	other entries-specific or general-relating to the document are normally derived from the main entry.					
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	The complete catalogue record of a bibliographical entity, presented in the form by which the entity is to be uniformly identified and cited.	1	1	1	1	4**
12 (AACR 2003)	The complete catalogue record of an item, presented in the form by which the entity is to be uniformly identified and cited. The main entry may include the tracing of all other headings under which the record is to be represented in the catalogue.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5

6.18.2.1 Discussion

RDC 4th edition (1904) defined the term too short. It mentions only the ‘full’ entry, but not describing the meaning of ‘full’. So, conciseness hampers. The definition indicates the concept of main entry in a precise form. So, preciseness fully maintained.

The same analysis is applicable for AA 1908.

CCC 1934 defined the concept in a longer way. So, conciseness partly maintained. The definition also lacks accuracy because it mentioned the concept of ‘more’ information but not mentioned the ‘completeness’. So, preciseness also hampers.

ALA1949 defined the term as too long. So, conciseness partly maintained. There are two definitions describing two different concepts. So, preciseness denied.

For the case of CCC 5 (1965), the definition is long and contains many sentences. So, conciseness partly maintained. But it defined all the components of a main entry accurately. So, full marks for preciseness.

AACR 1967 BT defined the term concisely and precisely by containing all the components of the concept in a brief but to the point way. So, full marks for conciseness and preciseness.

AACR 2002 (2003 update) started with a concise definition. But it mentions the tracing concept in a separate line. So, conciseness partly hampered. Otherwise, the definition is complete.

6.18.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Main entry’ are found as follows:

Highest score for the term is 7 out of 7 is obtained by the codes 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 12 and 13. For definitions, the highest score is 4 obtained by the code 8, i.e., AACR 1967 BT.

6.19 Term– Monograph

The evaluation of the term ‘Monograph’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.19.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.19A.

Table 6.19A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Monograph’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							Total
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	##							
3 (AA 1908)	##							
4 (CCC 1 1934)	##							
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6

7 (CCC 5 1965)	##							
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
12 (AACR 2002)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
13 (RDA 2016)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.19.1.1 Discussion

The term occurs in 4 codes out of 9 as selected for evaluation study. The term is totally free from synonym and homonym in every code. The term is totally transparent because it has a phrase, namely 'mono' which means one or single (in part or subject) which is stated in the definitions as well. So, T3 is fully satisfied in all the codes. The criteria T4 is not applicable here, as this is not a part of any broader term. The term is concrete because the presence of 'mono' creates the concept of one and also this is a very popular term having high mnemonic value. So T5 satisfied. The term is single worded and have English origin. So T6 and T7 successfully satisfied.

6.19.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.19B.

Table 6.19B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term 'Monograph'

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
5 (ALA 1949)	A systematic and complete treatise on a particular subject, usually detailed in treatment but not extensive in scope. It need not to be bibliographically independent.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A non-serial publication, either complete in one volume, or intended to be completed in a finite number of volumes.	1	1	0.5	1	3.5

12 (AACR 2002)	A bibliographic resource that is complete in one part or intended to be completed within a finite number of parts.					4
13 (RDA 2016)	A resource that is complete in one part or intended to be completed within a finite number of parts.					4

6.19.2.1 Discussion

In ALA 1949, the definition is fully concise. But the preciseness slightly hampers because the use of term Treatise has been used in the definition but the ‘treatise’ has not been defined in the code. So actually, it defined a special type of treatise, but treatise is not defined in the code. So, preciseness hampers. The definition of AACR 1967 BT is complete in all other respect, but it has some kind of negativity as it states the monograph as ‘non-serial publication’.

6.19.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Monograph’ are found as follows:

For term – The highest score 6 out of six (100%) obtained by code number 5, 8, 12, 13.

For definition – The highest score, 4 out of 4 obtained by code number 12 and 13.

6.20 Term – Periodical

The evaluation of the term ‘Periodical’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.20.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in table 6.20A.

Table 6.20A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Periodical’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC 1904)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
3 (AA 1908)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
4 (CCC 1 1934)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
7 (CCC 5 1965)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
12 (AACR 2002)	##							
13 (RDA 2016)	##							

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.20.1.1 Discussion

In all the codes, where the term is used has no synonym and homonym. So, criteria T1 and T2 satisfied completely. The term is also concrete because the term is so popular and easily remember able. So T5 also satisfied. The term is single worded as well as an English term. So T6 and T7 also satisfied.

6.20.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.20B.

Table 6.20B: Evaluation of the Definitions of the Term ‘Periodical’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	To- tal
2 (RDC 4 1904)	A work issued at intervals which are usually regular; it is generally written by many contributors.	1	1	1	1	4

3 (AA 1908)	A publication intended to appear in successive numbers or parts at more or less regular intervals and as a rule for an indefinite time. Each part properly contains matter on a variety of topics, generally by several contributors. **Newspapers, memoirs, proceedings etc. are not considered regular periodicals under the rules (as note).	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
4 (CCC 1 1934)	A work is said to be a periodical, 1. It consists of many volumes, published periodically – in rare cases as wholes, but usually part by part, each part being called a number or an issue or a fascicule, etc. 2. All the volumes, with rare exceptions if at all, are made up of distant, independent and coordinate contributions not forming a continuous exposition, by two or more personal authors.....	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
5 (ALA 1949)	A serial in parts which are not monograph and usually contain articles by several contributors. It generally has a distinctive title and the successive numbers or parts are intended to appear as stated or regular intervals and as a rule for an indefinite period.	0.5	1	0.5	1	3

7 (CCC 5 1965)	Periodical publication of which each volume is made up of distinct and independent contributions, not forming a continuous exposition, normally by two or more personal authors and normally the specific subjects and the authors of the contributions in successive volumes also being, in general, different.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
8 (AACR 1967BT)	A serial appearing or intended to appear indefinitely at regular or stated intervals, generally more frequently than annually, each issue of which normally contains separate articles, stories, or other writings.	1	1	1	1	4

6.20.2.1 Discussion

The definition of AA 1908 is partially concise as it is not brief, but it precisely stated the concept of a ‘periodical’. The definition of CCC 1934 has described the concept by some characteristics, which are equivalent to separate definitions. So, conciseness partly hamper as the definitions are too long and preciseness completely denied as there are more than one point of views in the definition. The definition of ALA 1949 also lacking conciseness to some extent, but preciseness is fully maintained as the definition is accurate. There is slight negativity in the definition as the concept has been defined as ‘not monograph’. Definition of CCC 3rd edition defined the term as same as CCC 1. Definition of AACR1967 BT has fulfilled all the criteria as it is concise, precise, positive and non-circular.

6.20.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Periodical’ are found as follows:

Term – The Highest score 6 out of 6 (100%) obtained by all the codes under the study, i.e., code number 2, 3, 4, 5,7,8.

Definition – The highest score obtained by two codes under the study – 2 and 8.

6.21Term – Reference

The evaluation of the term *Reference* and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.21.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.21A.

Table6.21A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Reference’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							Total
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	
1 (RDC 1876)	1	1	0	NA	0.5	1	1	4.5
2 (RDC 1904)	1	1	0	NA	0.5	1	1	4.5
3 (AA 1908)	1	1	0	NA	0.5	1	1	4.5
4 (CCC 1 1934)	##							
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	0	NA	0.5	1	1	4.5
7 (CCC 5 1965)	##							
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	0	NA	0.5	1	1	4.5
12 (AACR2 002)	1	1	0	NA	0.5	1	1	4.5
13 (RDA 2016)	1	1	0	NA	0.5	1	1	4.5

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.21.1.1 Discussion

The term is totally synonym and homonym free. The term is not transparent because it actually means direction from one heading to another, but it is popularly known as mentioning the source of something, even in Library science field it is also known as this. The term is partially concrete because it is physically visible but not perceptible as it is popularly known in other way.

6.21.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.21B.

Table 6.21B: Evaluation of the Definitions of the Term ‘Reference’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
1 (RDC 1 1876)	Partial registry of a book (omitting the imprint) under author, title, subject, or kind, referring to a more full entry under some other heading.	1	1	1	1	4
2 (RDC 4 1904)	Partial registry of a book (omitting the imprint) under author, title, subject, or kind, referring to a more full entry under some other heading.	1	1	1	1	4
3 (AA 1908)	A direction from one heading to another.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
5 (ALA 1949)	A direction from one heading to another.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A direction from one heading or entry to another.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
12 (AACR 2002)	A direction from one heading or entry to another.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
13 (RDA 2016)	A direction from one access point to another.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5

6.21.2.1 Discussion

In the definitions from AA1908 onwards the conciseness(D1) slightly hampers because it only states the idea in a very short form not even mentioning the direction from ‘unused heading’ to a ‘used heading’ or ‘used’ heading to another ‘used’ heading or ‘shorter’ to ‘fuller’ heading.

6.21.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Reference’ are found as follows:

For terms the highest score 4.5(75%) obtained by codes 1, 2, 3,5,7,12,13.

For definition, the highest score 4(100%) obtained by codes 1 and 4.

6.22 Term– Serial

The evaluation of the term ‘Serial’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.22.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.22A.

Table 6.22A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Serial’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
3 (AA1908)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
5 (ALA1949)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
7 (CCC51965)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
13 (RDA2016)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.22.1.1 Discussion

The term was first used in CCC1-1934.

The term was found to be totally synonym and homonym free and is transparent because it conveys clearly the nature of the document it described. So T1, T2 and T3 all satisfied.

The term is not a subdivision of any broader term, and hence Consistency (T4) is not applicable here.

The term is concrete because the concept of serials creates a good impact to the human mind and so it is perceptible and has strong mnemonic value. So T5 fully satisfied.

This is an English term and single-worded.

So, Native Language preference and Linguistic Economy are also satisfied.

6.22.2 Evaluation of Definitions

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.22B.

Table 6.22B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Serial’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
2 (RDC 4 1904)	A publication issued in successive parts, usually at regular intervals, and continued indefinitely.	1	1	1	1	4
3 (AA 1908)	A publication issued in successive parts, usually at regular intervals, and as a rule intended to be continued indefinitely. Serials include periodicals, annuals and memoirs, proceeding and transactions of the society.	1	1	1	1	4
4 (CCC 1 1934)	A work is said to be serial if 1. A volume or a small group of volumes of it is published annually or at other definite intervals 2.all the volumes or	0.5	0	1	1	2.5

	all the periodical groups of volume give more or less similar information mainly relating to its period of publication or to the period which forms their subjects in the case of archival publications.....5 The work is not a periodical.					
5 (ALA 1949)	A publication issued in successive parts, usually at regular intervals, and, as a rule, intended to be continued indefinitely.	1	1	1	1	4
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Periodical publication of which each volume or each periodical group of volumes embodies more or less the same kind of information, usually in the same pattern, mainly relating to its year (or other period of coverage).	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A publication issued in successive parts bearing numerical or chronological designations and intended to be continued indefinitely. Serials include periodicals, newspapers, annuals, journals, memoirs, proceedings, transactions, etc.	1	1	1	1	4
12 (AACR 2002)	A continuing resource issued in succession of discrete parts,	1	1	1	1	4

	usually bearing numbering, that has no predetermined conclusions. For examples journals, magazines, electronic journals, annual reports, newspapers and monographic series.					
13 (RDA 2016)	A publication issued in successive parts, usually at regular intervals, and continued indefinitely	1	1	1	1	4

6.22.2.1 Discussion

CCC 1 1934 defined the term in five senses. All the definitions except the first one are too long. It should be assigned ‘0’ as the score of conciseness, but considering the first definition partial conciseness considered.

There are five definitions of a concept which ultimately denied the preciseness.

ALA 1949 defined the term with complete preciseness and conciseness. This definition satisfies all the necessary criteria of definition as established for the study.

CCC 1965 included all the necessary components of serials by making the concept precise. But it makes the definition too long, as the conciseness hampers.

Other definitions fulfil all the necessary characteristics of an ideal definition as established by the study.

6.22.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Serial’ are found as follows:

The highest mark for the term is 6 out of 6 (100%) obtained by the codes 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 12 and 13. The highest mark for definitions is 4 out of 4 (100%) obtained by 6 codes- 2, 3, 5, 8, 12 and 13.

6.23 Term – Series

The evaluation of the term *Series* and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.23.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation score of the term is shown in Table 6.23A.

Table 6.23A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Series’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							Total
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	
1 (RDC 1876)	##							##
2 (RDC 1904)	##							##
3 (AA 1908)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
4 (CCC 1 1934)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
7 (CCC 5 1965)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
12 (AACR 2002)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
13 (RDA 2016)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.23.1.1 Discussion

The term ‘Series’ have no synonym and homonym. So T1 and T2 satisfied. But whereas the transparency is concerned it may convey two things, one is the series title itself and another is a sequence of number. But actually, Series defined as some similar types of publications. So, the transparency partly hampered. For concreteness (T5) also the term popularly creates the Inference of sequence of some mathematical numbers with some similarities. This concept is too stronger and creates the Inference in the human mind accordingly. So, Series as a publication has lower value of Inference than its popular form. So, concreteness (T5) also partly hampered.

6.23.2 Evaluation of definitions

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.23B.

Table 6.23B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Series’

Code number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
3 (AA 1908)	A number of volumes usually related to one another in subject or otherwise issued successively by a publisher as rule in uniform style, with a collective title which generally appears at the head of the title page, on the half title, or on the cover.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5
4 (CCC 1 1934)	Two or more books are set to belong to a series if 1. They are issued successively by one publisher or by one corporate body, in a common form or uniform style and having some similarity of subject or purpose; 2. Each book has a distinct and independent title of its own; 3. All the volumes do not have a common index; 4. The name of the series appears in all or at least one of the book in the series.... 5.All the book do not have the same class number.	0	0	1	1	2
5 (ALA 1949)	1.A number of separate works, usually related to one another in subject or otherwise.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5

	2. Each of two or more volumes of essays, lectures, articles, or other writings, similar in character and issued in sequence. 3. a separately numbered sequence of volume s within a series or serial.					
7 (CCC 5 1965)	A set of books, not constituting a multi-volume book and with the following attributes- 1. the books are issued, normally successively by one publisher or by one sponsoring body or person, usually in a uniform style, and having some similarity of subject or standard or purpose.... *other attributes are not relevant for definition.	0.5	0	0.5	1	2
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1. A number of separate works issued in succession and related to one another by the fact that each bears a collective title generally appearing at the head of the title page, on the half title, or on the cover; normally issued by the same publisher in a uniform style, frequently in a numerical sequence. Often termed 'monographic series'.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5

	2. Each of two or more volumes of essays, lectures, articles, or other writings similar in character and issued in sequence 3. A separately numbered sequence of volumes within a series or serial.					
12 (AACR 2002)	A group of separate items related to one another by the fact that each item bears, in addition to its own title proper, a collective title applying to the group as a whole. The individual items may or may not be numbered. 2. Each of two or more volumes of essays, lectures, articles, or other writings, similar in character and issued in sequence, ... 3.a separately numbered sequence of volumes within a series or serial.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
13 (RDA 2016)	A group of separate manifestations related to one another by the fact that each manifestation bears, in addition to its own title proper, a collective title applying to the group as a whole with or without numbering or, a separately numbered sequence	0.5	0	1	1	2.5

	of volumes or issues within a series or serial.					
--	---	--	--	--	--	--

6.23.2.1 Discussion

In all the definitions, there are two or more aspects of the concept. So, Preciseness (D2) fully denied except code no.3. The definitions are also too long. So, Conciseness (T1) partly hampered. In CCC 1 1934 there are so many conditions of a Series that the conciseness totally abolished.

In the definition of CCC 5 1965 slight negativity occurs as series has been defined as 'not constituting multi volume books'. So, D3 partly maintained.

6.23.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of 'Series' are found as follows:

For terms the highest score 5 (83.3%) obtained by codes 3, 5,7,8,12,13.

For definition, the highest score 3.5 (87.5%) obtained by code 3.

6.24 Term – Title

The evaluation of the term 'Title' and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.24.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.24A.

Table 6.24A: Evaluation Score of the Term 'Title'

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							Total
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	
1 (RDC 1876)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
2 (RDC1904)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
3 (AA1908)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
5 (ALA1949)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6

7 (CCC51965)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
13 (RDA2016)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.24.1.1 Discussion

The terms Title occurs in all the nine catalogue codes as selected for evaluation.

The term is totally free from synonyms and homonyms.

The term is transparent because it conveys the concept of document names clearly.

The consistency is not applicable in this case because it has no broader term, and hence contextualizing with the broader term is not applicable.

The term is concrete because the concept denoted by it is visible, and it creates an impact on human mind.

The term is an English term, so the native language preference maintained.

As the term is single worded, so linguistic economy fully maintained.

6.24.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.24B.

Table 6.24B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Title’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total

1 (RDC 1 1876)	In the broader sense, includes heading, title proper, and imprint; in the narrower, in which it is thereafter used, it is the name of the book given by the author on the title page.	1	0	1	1	3
2 (RDC 4 1904)	In the broader sense, includes heading, title proper, and imprint; in the narrower, in which it is thereafter used, it is the name of the book given by the author on the title page.	1	0	1	1	3
3 (AA 1908)	1. In the broad sense, the distinguishing name of any written production given on the title page, including the name of the author, editor, translator, the edition, etc. But excluding the imprint. 2. In the narrow sense, the title does not include the name of the author, editor, etc.	1	0	1	1	3
4 (CCC 1 1934)	The name of a book or a periodical publication, usually given on the title page.	1	1	1	1	4

5 (ALA 1949)	1. In the broad sense, the distinguishing name of any written production as given on the title page, including the name of the author, editor, translator, the edition, etc., but excluding the imprint. 2. In the narrow sense, the title does not include the name of the author, editor, etc.	1	0	1	1	3
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Name of work	0	0	1	1	2
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1. In the broad sense, the name of a work, including any alternative title, subtitle, or other associated descriptive matter, but excluding the name of the author, editor, etc., unless the name forms a grammatically inseparable part of the title. 2. In the narrow sense, the name of a work, exclusive of any alternative title, subtitle, or other associated descriptive matter on the title page.	1	0	1	1	3
12 (AACR 2002)	A word, phrase, character, or group of characters, normally appearing in an item that names the item or the work, contained in it.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
13 (RDA 2016)	A word, character, or group of words or characters that names a manifestation or a work embodied in it.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5

6.24.2.1 Discussion

RDC1876 – There are actually two definitions. Both are brief and concise. But as the two senses are used, so preciseness denied.

RDC 1904 and AA 1908 – In these two cases, the same treatment as described in RDC 1876 have been followed.

CCC 1 1934 – The definition has maintained all the criteria, i.e., conciseness, preciseness, positiveness and non-circularity in distinct manner.

ALA 1949 – It defined the term as same as described in AA1908. This proves the Anglo-American similarities of defining the term in the same way even after forty years.

CCC5 1964 – This definition is too short and hence conciseness and preciseness hamper. But one thing to be noted that Ranganathan used the phrase work in this edition which is a generalized term.

AACR 1967 BT also used two definitions, and hence preciseness was denied.

AACR 2002 and RDA 2016 the definitions are concise but accuracy or preciseness partially maintained as the definitions denote ‘words, phrase, character or group of characters’ to indicate a single concept.

6.24.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Title’ are found as follows:

Term – All the codes obtain the same score, i.e., 6 which is the most possible score for terms in this case.

Definition – CCC 1 1934 has obtained the maximum score, i.e., 4.

6.25 Term- Title Page

The evaluation of the term ‘Title page’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.25.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.25A.

Table 6.25A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Title Page’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	##							
3 (AA 1908)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
4 (CCC 1 1934)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
5 (ALA 1949)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
7 (CCC 5 1965)	##							
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
12 (AACR 2002)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7
13 (RDA 2016)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	7

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.25.1.1 Discussion

The term is totally free from synonym and homonym. It is also transparent and creates the Inference of a page bearing the title on human mind easily. Other characteristic also fulfilled.

6.25.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.25B.

Table 6.25B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Title page’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
3 (AA 1908)	The page at the beginning of a book, on which is printed the title and imprint.	1	1	1	1	4
4 (CCC 1	The page at or near the beginning	1	1	1	1	4

1934)	of a book (or a periodical publication), which bears the title and usually also the name of the author, compiler, or editor, the name of the publisher and the place and date of publication (NED).					
5 (ALA 1949)	A page at the beginning of a book or work, bearing its full title and usually, though not necessarily, the Author's (editors, etc.) name and the imprint. The leaf bearing the title page is commonly called the 'title page' although properly also called the 'title leaf'.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	A page at the beginning of a publication, bearing its full title and usually, though not necessarily, the author's (editor's, etc.) name and the imprint. The leaf bearing the title page is commonly called the 'title page' although properly called the 'title leaf'.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
12 (AACR 2R 2002)	A page at the beginning of an item bearing the title proper and usually, though not necessarily, the statement of responsibility and the data relating to publication. The leaf bearing the title page is commonly called the title page, although properly called the title leaf.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5

13 (RDA 2016)	A page at the beginning of a manifestation bearing a title proper and usually, though not necessarily, a statement of responsibility and data relating to publication. Facing pages or pages on successive leaves containing this information with or Without repetition, are considered collectively as a title page.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5
---------------	--	---	-----	---	---	-----

6.25.2.1 Discussion

The definitions from ALA 1949 onwards are concise, but preciseness partly hampered as these definitions make some confusion with Title page and Title leaf.

6.25.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Title page’ are found as follows:

For terms highest score 7 (100%) obtained by codes 3, 4, 5, 8, 12, 13.

For definition – The Highest score 4 (100%) obtained by code 3 and 4.

6.26 Term– Translator

The evaluation of the term ‘Translator’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.26.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in Table 6.26A.

Table 6.26A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Translator’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	##							
2 (RDC1904)	##							
3 (AA1908)	##							
4 (CCC1 1934)	##							
5 (ALA1949)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
7 (CCC51965)	##							
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6
13 (RDA2016)	1	1	1	NA	1	1	1	6

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.26.1.1 Discussion

The term found totally synonym and homonym free. Other characters assigned by T3-T7 holds good for the term.

6.26.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in Table 6.26B.

Table 6.26B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Translator’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
5 (ALA 1949)	One who renders from one language into another, or from an older form of a language into the modern form, more or less closely following the original.	1	1	1	1	4
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	One who renders from one language into another, or from an older form of a language into the	1	1	1	1	4

	modern form, more or less closely following the original.					
12 (AACR 2002)	One who renders from one language into another, or from an older form of a language into the modern form, more or less closely following the original.	1	1	1	1	4
13 (RDA 2016)	An agent contributing to an expression of a work by expressing the linguistic content of the work in a language different from that of previous expressions of the original work. Translation of linguistic content between forms of the same language from different time periods is included.	0.5	1	1	1	3.5

6.26.2.1 Discussion

At the last definition of RDA the conciseness slightly hampers because it states the two components in two separate sentences. All other definitions hold good with the criteria of evaluation of the definition.

6.26.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of ‘Translator’ are found as follows:

For term the highest marks 6 (100%) obtained by codes 5, 8, 12, 13.

For the definition, the highest score 4 (100%) obtained by codes 5,8,12.

6.27 Term – Volume

The evaluation of the term ‘Volume’ and its definitions are shown in the following tables:

6.27.1 Term Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the term are shown in table 6.27A.

Table 6.27A: Evaluation Score of the Term ‘Volume’

Code Number and Code Name	Evaluation Criteria							
	T1	T2	T3	T4	T5	T6	T7	Total
1 (RDC 1876)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
2 (RDC1904)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
3 (AA1908)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
4 (CCC1 1934)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
5 (ALA1949)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
7 (CCC51965)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
8 (AACR1967BT)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
12 (AACR2002)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5
13 (RDA2016)	1	1	0.5	NA	0.5	1	1	5

##- Not occurred in the code, NA-Not applicable

6.27.1.1 Discussion

The term, Volume, occurs in all the nine catalogue codes as selected for evaluation.

The term is totally free from synonyms and homonyms.

The term is partially transparent because it may convey another meaning in physics or mathematics.

The consistency is not applicable in this case because it has no broader term, and hence contextualizing with the broader term is not applicable.

The term is partially concrete because the concept denoted by it is visible, but it does not create a clear perception on human mind at first stage because all are mostly familiar with the concept as described in physics and mathematics by this term (i.e., quantity of something or sound of radio and TV).

The term is an English term, so the native language preference maintained.

As the term is single worded, so linguistic economy fully maintained.

6.27.2 Definition Evaluation

The evaluation scores of the definitions of the term are shown in table 6.27B.

Table 6.27B: Evaluation Score of the Definitions of the Term ‘Volume’

Code Number and Code Name	Definition	Evaluation Criteria				
		D1	D2	D3	D4	Total
1 (RDC 1 1876)	A book distinguished from other books or the volumes of the same work by having its own title, paging, and register.	1	0	1	0.5	2.5
2 (RDC 4 1904)	A book distinguished from other books or the volumes of the same work by having its own title, paging, and register.	1	0	1	0.5	2.5
3 (AA 1908)	1. A book distinguished from other books or from other parts of the same work by having its own title page and usually independent paging. 2. Whatever is contained in one binding.	1	0	1	1	3
4 (CCC 1 1934)	A written or printed work or portion of a work occupying several sheets or leaves of paper or other substance fastened together to be opened at any particular place, the whole being protected by binding or covers of some kind.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
5 (ALA 1949)	In the bibliographical sense, a	0	0.5	1	1	2.5

	book distinguished from other books or from other major divisions of the same work by having its own inclusive title page, half title, or portfolio title, and usually independent pagination, foliation, or register.					
7 (CCC 5 1965)	Several leaves of paper or other material used for recording, either the whole or a part of the work, fastened together to opened at any desired place.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
8 (AACR 1967 BT)	In the bibliographical sense, a book distinguished from other books or from other major divisions of an edition of a work by having its own inclusive title page, half title, cover title, or portfolio title, and usually independent pagination, foliation, or register 2. In the material sense, all that is contained in one binding, portfolio, etc., whether it be as originally issued or as bound after issue. The volume as a material unit may not coincide with the volume as a bibliographical unit. When a physical unit designated 'part' by the publisher is too large or too extensive to be bound with one or more others, it is called a volume	0.5	0	1	1	2.5

	in collation, but in contents and other notes, the publisher's designation is followed.					
12 (AACR 2002)	In the bibliographic sense, a major division of a work, regardless of its designation by the publisher, distinguished from other major divisions of the same work by having its own inclusive title page, half title, cover title, or portfolio title, and usually independent pagination, foliation, or signature. The major bibliographic unit may include various title pages and/or paginations. 2. In the material sense, all that is contained in one binding, portfolio, etc. Whether as originally issued or as bound after issue. The volume as a material unit may not coincide with the volume as a bibliographic unit.	0.5	0	1	1	2.5
13 (RDA 2016)	A carrier type consisting of one or more sheets bound or fastened together to form a single unit.	1	0.5	1	1	3.5

6.27.2.1 Discussion

RDC 1 1876 – There are actually two entities defined. One is a book and another is the volume of the same work. Thus, conciseness maintained but preciseness lacks. As the word volume is mentioned in the definition, so partial circularity occurs.

RDC 4 1904 – Same treatment as in RDC1876.

AA1908 – Two definitions are there. Both of them are brief but to the point. But two definitions indicate two separate entities. So, preciseness hampers.

CCC 1 1934 – The definition is too long but comprehensive. So, conciseness partly maintained. But as it denotes so many entities at a time, the preciseness hampers.

ALA 1949 – Definitions too long and diffused. So, conciseness denied. But as it includes all possible components of a document, so, preciseness is partly maintained.

CCC 5 1964 – Definition is partly concise. But it lacks preciseness as it indicates several leaves of paper or other materials-which is indefinite in nature.

AACR 1967 BT – Defined in two senses. So, preciseness denied. Both definitions are too long. So, conciseness partially maintained.

AACR 2002 – As same as AACR 1967 BT.

RDA 2016 – The definition is concise. But being so generalized, the accuracy is indefinite. So, preciseness hampers.

6.27.3 Inference

The highest performance scores by the term and the definitions of 'Volume' are found as follows:

Term – All the codes obtain the same score 5 out of 7 (71%) which is the most possible score for terms in this case.

Definition – RDA2016 has obtained the maximum score 3.5 out of 4, i.e., 87.5%.

6.28 Conclusion

The evaluation study was made on twenty-seven (27) core terms and their definitions in nine catalogue codes under the study. For terms, it is found that all the 27 terms have obtained more than 80% score from term evaluation, where the maximum possible score is 7. So, the codes follow the standards for coining a term with a good parity. One homonym found for term Catalogue in AA1908. For the term, Author, two synonyms found in code 1 and 2. Transparency denied for two terms, Atlas and Reference (see Appendix 5 for details). These are indications of matching the term evaluation criteria

almost to the point in all codes. A comparative study of occurrences of the core terms and their highest scores (for terms and definitions) in nine selected catalogue codes is shown in the following table:

Table 6.28: Number of Terms Obtaining the Highest Scores in Different Catalogue Codes

Code No.	Name of the Code	Number of Core Terms Covered in the Code	Number of Terms Obtained the Highest Score for Term Evaluation	Number of Definitions Obtained the Highest Score for Definition Evaluation
1	RDC 1 1876	6	5	2
2	RDC 4 1904	13	12	4
3	AA 1908	21	21	11
4	CCC 1 1934	17	17	5
5	ALA 1949	24	23	7
7	CCC 5 1965	17	16	2
8	AACR 1 1967 BT	25	23	12
12	AACR 2002	24	23	14
13	RDA 2016	17	17	7

The above table shows the performance of nine catalogue codes in the evaluation of terms and their definitions. Among 27 core terms, the highest number of terms (25) are found in AACR 1 1967 BT. For the score of terms, American codes are found to score better than other codes. For definitions, AACR 2002 is found to score better than others.

Among 164 definitions Conciseness hampered in 9 cases, Preciseness hampered in 41 cases, 6 definitions are found negative and five are Circular in nature (see Appendix 5). So, there is a scope of rectifying the statements of definitions in the catalogue codes.

Chapter – 7

Summary of Findings and Conclusion

According to the objectives of this research study (provided in the Chap.1, Sec. 1.3), the results that were uncovered and already detailed in various chapters of this research report can be summarized as follows:

7.1 Summary of Findings

Summary of findings is as follows.

7.1.1 Findings with respect to Objective- 1

Objective- 1: To show the evolution and occurrences of cataloguing terms in terminology sections of various catalogue codes, along with their synonyms and homonyms, and rank them according to their frequency of occurrences (*vide*, Chap.1, Sec. 1.3).

Findings:

The terms, as defined by the catalogue codes, were divided into nine broad categories, namely Author related Terms, Catalogue related Terms, Document related Terms, Edition related Terms, Entry related Terms, Heading related Terms, Preliminary Pages related Terms, Section of Entry related Terms, and Title related Terms. This categorization was made using S R Ranganathan's CCC-5th edition guidelines. The following reference matrix for used terms may be found if overall statistics of terms under these categories are taken from each of the codes.

RDC 1 (1876) – 12 terms, RDC 4 (1904) – 40 terms, AA 1908 – 40 terms, CCC 1 1934 – 37 terms, ALA 1949 – 48 terms, CCC 3 1951 – 40 terms, CCC 5 1965 – 89 terms, AACR 1967 BT – 49 terms, AACR 1967 NAT – 48 terms, AACR 1978 – 109 terms, AACR 2 1988 – 122 terms, AACR 2 2002 – 125 terms, RDA 2016 – 120 terms (total 879). Among these terms, 321 unique terms have been found.

Therefore, it is evident that as new editions of the codes were published, the number of terms under the chosen categories rose within the same code. There are several code families, including the RDC family (1876 and 1904) the AA family (1908 and 1949), the CCC family (1934, 1951, and 1965), the AACR family (1967, 1978, 1988, and 2002), and the reference RDA family (2016 release). In each new edition of each family, the number of terms has grown. This is a clear indication of how cataloguing is a subject that is dynamic, and as a result, new terminology has been introduced throughout time.

Changes in Terms

Changes in terms are furnished in the following (*vide*, Chap. 4).

- New terms – New terms have been coined to include new concepts or to define a traditional concept not defined earlier, e.g., Broadcaster in code 13. Most of the terms newly coined are found in RDA 2016.
- Terms used previously, but defined later, like Terms of Availability (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec. 4.8.2) — this term was defined in RDA 2016, but used without definition in many previous catalogue codes.
- Terms coined by an earlier code but not used in later codes — some terms used in earlier codes but not used by the later codes, e.g., Hanging Indention (*vide*,

Chap.4, Sec. 4.8.5). The term was used by Code 2 in 1904, but it was not followed by any other code, due to the obsolescence of the concept in later time.

- Terms coined by a code and followed by the later codes, even by the latest, e.g., Title and Volume, were used by all the codes.
- Terms used by some codes only, e.g., Cross Reference Entry, was used by CCC family only (*vide*, Code 4, 6, 7, (*Vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.5.3). Similarly, Parallel Title was used by AACR family only. The judgments of the code makers played the role here.
- Terms used in earlier codes, unused in middle codes but used by but latest codes with changing context – The term, Collector, was used in code 2 and code13. But the scope of the concept was increased in the latter codes (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.1.1.1).
- Terms used in middle-aged codes only, e.g., Facsimile Edition (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.4.2) was used only in code 8 and 9 (i.e., AACR 1).
- Term replaced by more generic term, e.g., Editor was replaced by Author and Collector was replaced by Author (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.14).
- Terms replaced by more specific term, e.g., Author was replaced by Personal Author (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec. 4.1.1.8).
- Term assigned, Non-Preferred at earlier, but was used as Preferred Term in later time, e.g., Editor at the earlier stages was replaced by author, but was used in later codes. The literary warrant of the edited document increased with the time, and as a result, the term was used as the preferred term in later codes. *vide*, Chap.4 Sec.4.10.14).
- For more transparency – Overhead Pojectural was replaced by Overhead Transparency (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.18), Filing Title was replaced by Uniform Title (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.16).
- Due to Canon of Reticence or Euphemism – Bastard Title was replaced by Half Title (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec. 4.10.6).

Homonyms – Some homonyms are found, e.g., Chart and Chart (cartography) (*vide*, Chap. 4, Sec. 4.11).

Synonyms – Many synonyms are found in the study. They are connected by “see” references at the terminology sections of the catalogue codes. Transparency and

Concreteness are found two important characteristics for choosing the preferred terms over many synonyms. Some instances are as follows:

- Analysis was replaced by Analytical Reference (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.1).
- Analytical was replaced by Analytical Reference (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.1).
- Audio Captioning was replaced by Audio Description (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.2).
- Chart (cartography) was replaced by Map (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec. 4.10.8).
- Cine Film was replaced by Motion Picture (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec. 4.10.9).
- Closed Score was replaced by Condensed Score (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec. 4.10.10).
- Cross Reference was replaced by Reference (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.13).
- Engineering Drawing was replaced by Technical Drawing (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec. 4.10.15).
- Filing Title was replaced by Uniform Title (Chap.4, Sec. 4.10.16)
- Standard Title was replaced by Uniform Title (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.16).
- Overhead Projectual was replaced by Overhead Transparency/ Transparency (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.18).
- Secondary Entry was replaced by Added Entry (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.19).

Some other instances are also found for choosing the preferred terms:

- Author was replaced by Personal Author and Corporate Author (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.4) (here the broader term is replaced by the narrower term).
- Collector was replaced by Author (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec. 4.10.11).
- Editor was replaced by Author (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.14).
- Computer File replaced by Electronic Resources (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec. 4.10.12).

In these cases, generic terms were given preferences over specific terms.

In some cases, peculiarities have been found, where terms having less transparency are

chosen over more transparent terms:

- Subject Analytical has been replaced by Cross Reference Entry, though the first term has more transparency than the latter.
- Thesis has been replaced by Dissertation, Academic.
- Author Title Added Entry has been replaced by Name Title Added Entry.
- Author Title Reference has been replaced by Name Title Reference (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec.4.10.20 and 4.10.21).

Canon of Reticence is followed in some cases for choosing more polite terms over a noisy term like-

- Bastard title was replaced by Half Title (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec. 4.10.6).

Ranking of Terms – Among total 879 terms, 321 terms are found as unique terms, some terms are found to be occurred in more than one code, and some terms also found to be occurred only in a particular code. The rank analysis (*vide*, Appendix1A) shows the occurrence of a particular term in different catalogue codes, i.e., their existence in different times. From this rank analysis it is also clear that during the evolution which terms have occurred with high frequency in different codes, and which terms have occurred with moderate frequency, and also the terms, which have occurred with very low frequency.

There are 321 ‘Used Terms’ or ‘Preferred Terms’, which has been found in the study of various categories (as discussed in Chap.1, Sec. 1.4.2) (For rank list of terms according to their occurrences, see Appendix-1A). The occurrence percentage of the terms are shown in the following matrix.

- 100% occurrences - 2 terms (Title and Volume)
- 99%-50% occurrences - 25 terms (Serial 3-27)
- 50%-30% occurrences - 49 terms (serial 28-76)
- 30%-20% occurrences - 54 terms (serial 77-130)
- Below 20% occurrences - 191 terms (serial 131-321)

So only two terms are found, to occur in all the thirteen codes under the study. These are: *Title* and *Volume*. (For details term occurrence, please see Appendix- 4A) There

are 191 terms having occurrence percentage below 20%, occurring once or twice. This is a clear indication that most of the terms in library catalogue codes are newly coined terms by the code makers. In RDA 2016, 66 terms (like variant title, etc.) coined newly whereas in CCC5, 1965, 46 newly coined terms found (like Speaking Book, etc.). It is also to be noted that, some terms like, Commentator, etc. although have been used in various earlier catalogue code and their rules, but they are defined in RDA2016 for the first time. The probable cause behind this is that RDA tried to clear each concept without any confusion to help the cataloguer assigning the designation of an entity in web cataloguing environment. CCC 5, 1965 is a classified catalogue code with additional rules for dictionary catalogue. So, new concepts and terms are needed to satisfy the need of classified catalogue, as well as dictionary catalogue. For example, Number Entry (for classified part), Specific Added Entry (for dictionary part).

Core Terms

The terms having more than 50% occurrence in the catalogue code selected are designated as core terms (*vide*, Chap.4, Sec. 4.12, Table 4 and 23). There are 6 Author related terms— 1 catalogue related terms, 6 document related terms, 4 entry related terms, 1 edition related terms, 2 heading related terms, 2 preliminary pages related term, 4 title related terms, and 1 'sections of entry' related term in the above table. This analysis reflects that among 50% occurrence group, representatives of all nine categories are present. Author and Document related terms have the same occurrence value (6 among 27) followed by the Title and Entry related terms (4 out of 27). But among total 321 terms under study, Author related terms are 37, Catalogue related terms 15, Document related terms are 162, Edition related terms are 8, Entry related terms are 44, Heading related terms are 7, Preliminary page related terms are 7, 'Sections of entry' related terms are 14, and Title related terms are 27 (*vide*, Appendix 6). So the occurrence probability value of Author related terms is 0.162 (i.e., 6 among 37 = $6/37$), whereas for document related terms, it is 0.030 (i.e., $6/162$). This indicates that the repeatability of document related terms in different catalogue codes is much less than compared to other categories of terms. In other words, most of the Document related terms are newly coined in new codes and are not repeated by the later codes. It is also to be noted on the other hand that Documents related terms cover more than half of the total term sample (162 out of 321). As the new document types are emerging time to

time, new document related terms are also being coined and included in the codes.

7.1.2 Findings with respect to Objective- 2

Objective- 2: To show the changes of terms and their definitions over time in different catalogue codes (*vide*, Chap.1, Sec. 1.3).

Findings:

For the purpose of this study, 27 core terms having occurrence percentage more than 50 had been chosen. The 253 definitions of these 27 terms, occurring in 13 catalogue codes under the study, were analysed. The following facts are revealed:

- Negative Definitions- i.e., defined the term as “negative sense of something”, e.g., *Added entry* (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec 5.1.1).
- Ambiguous Definitions- some definitions are ambiguous in the sense that they do not distinct the concept from similar terms, e.g., *Title page and Added title page* (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec.5.2.1).
- More Elaborative with the Time- the scope of the definition(s) increased with the time. e.g., *Alternative title* (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec.5.3.2), *Atlas* (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec. 5.4.2), *Corporate body* (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec. 5.10.1).
- Narrower Definitions- some definitions become narrower in the size with the time, e.g., *Reference* defined in few earlier codes in an elaborative way, but in later codes it has become more generalized and shorter (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec5.21).
- Varied Definitions- some definitions stated differently in different codes under the study, e.g., *Binder's title* (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec 5.6.1) stated the position and the provider of Binder's title differently in different codes.
- Definitions become more Generalized with the Time- e.g., *Catalogue* (*vide*, Chap5, Sec.5.7.2), *Collection* (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec. 5.8.2), *Compiler* (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec. 5.9).
- Definitions sometimes come later than the Coining of the Term- some terms coined earlier by defined later as the related documents emerged sometime later of the coining of the term, e.g., *Corporate body*, though coined by the British Museum code in 1841 but defined for the first time in CCC 1 1934 (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec 5.10.1).

- More than one Definition for the Same Term in the Same Code- some terms are defined in two ways or more in the same code, e.g. Author defined in two ways in the same code of AA1908 and ALA1949. (Chap.5, Sec.5.5).Catalogue defined in two senses in AACR2R1988 and AACR2002 (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec.5.7).
- Definitions Supported by Examples– some definitions are supported by suitable examples, e.g., definitions of catalogue exemplified in AACR1988 and AACR 2002 (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec.5.7). As per ISO: 10241 this style should be followed.
- Definitions Started with a Concept, Changed in Middle Ages and at the Latest Stage Went Back to the First Concept- e.g., *Edition* (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec.5.11.2).
- More Generalized but Less Expressive- e.g., Entry (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec.5.13.2).
- The Definition Changes the Flavour, but the Term remain Unchanged- e.g., Joint author (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec. 5.17) defined in later codes with more increased purview as the producer of a document by authoring, editing, translating with other persons. So, the flavour changed from Joint authorship to Joint collaboration, but the term remains unchanged.
- Definitions showing the Merging of Two Concepts – unlike splitting up the concepts, some definitions show the merging of two related concepts, e.g., Monograph and treatise (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec. 5.19), Serial with periodical (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec.5.20).
- Definitions remain Totally Unchanged for a Long Period of Time (more than a century) - e.g., Reference (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec.5.21).
- Definitions too Short – some definitions are too short in some codes- e.g., Title defined in too short in CCC5 (*vide*, Chap.5, Sec. 5.24).
- Definitions Create Confusion between Two Terms- e.g., Definitions of Title page sometimes make confusion with Title Leaf (definitions of codes, *vide*, 5,8,9,11 and 12 of Chap.5, Sec. 5.25).

7.1.3 Findings with respect to Objective- 3

Objective- 3: To evaluate the changes in cataloguing terminologies, i.e., the changes in terms and their definitions, in the light of the canons/guiding principles prescribed by the cataloguing authorities (*vide*, Chap.1, Sec. 1.3).

Findings:

Ranganathan stated that terminologies are not static. They should get change with the changes in their subject contents over the time. Terminologies have two components – the term (Designation) and the Definition of the term. There are two sets of Canons/Guiding Principles for assessing the changes in cataloguing terms. These Canons are introduced by S. R. However, for assessing the definitions, a guideline has been introduced by ISO704: 2000.

Based on the aforesaid canons/guiding principles, two sets of parameters were developed and used to assess the changes in terms and their definitions. They are as follows:

- For terms – Homonym freeness, Synonym freeness, Transparency, Consistency, Concreteness, Native language preference and linguistic economy (*vide*, Chap.3, Sec. 3.16.1).
- For definitions – Conciseness, Preciseness, Positiveness and non-circularity (*vide*, Chap.3, Sec. 3.16.2).

The study covered nine Catalogue Codes. These nine codes were RDC 1 and 4 (Code Nos. 1 and 2) from the RDC family, AA 1908 and ALA 1949 (Code Nos. 3 and 5) from the ALA family, CCC 1 1934 and CCC 5 1965 (Code Nos. 8 and 12) from the CCC family, AACR 1967 BT and AACR 2002 (2003 update) from the AACR family, and RDA 2016 release (Code Nos. 8 and 13) from the RDA family. As core terms, the top 27 terms with an occurrence frequency of greater than 50% (see Appendix 1A) were chosen. The Code, AACR 1967 BT, and AACR 2002 were determined to contain the most occurrences of these terms.

It is revealed from the study that the most of the core terms have appeared in AACR Codes. Despite the fact that only 17 out of the 27 core terms in CCCs are present, the first edition of the CCC received the highest rating for term evaluation due to its 17

occurrences. Similar scores were obtained by RDA 2016 and ALA 1949. According to the frequency of the highest score, each code received greater than 80% for the term evaluation. The presence of 1 homonym and 2 non-transparent terms among the 27 terms in the nine Codes is another observation. Native language preference has been denied in this case because there is only one term that is detected that is in the other language, namely Atlas.

For the definitions, AACR2002 received the highest score of 58 percent, which it received for 14 out of the 24 definitions (vide, Chap.6, Sec.6.28) As a result, none of the codes define every term in accordance with the model criteria.

There are 164 definitions for the 27 core terms, 9 of which were not concise, 41 of which were not precise, 6 of which were negative, and 5 of which were circular in nature. As a result, most of the time the definitions' precision was compromised (vide, Chap.6 Sec.6.1 to 6.27 and Appendix 5). The most important code that defines the terms more systematically than others is AACR 2002.

How have cataloguing terminology and their definitions changed throughout time? - was the initial research question. Following the completion of the study, it was observed that cataloguing terms are evolving over time. Old terms become outdated and are no longer used in later times, whereas new ones are created in the new era. There are very few terms with a high frequency of occurrence (greater than fifty percent as per the study). There are homonyms and synonyms for some terms. The definitions of the same term have occasionally changed and occasionally remained constant. The creation of new terms, the disappearance of useless terminology in later eras, or the change of the designations of the same concept in contemporary days demonstrate the dynamism of the subject cataloguing.

The evaluation study of terms and definitions demonstrates that the majority of cataloguing terms were created using linguistic concepts. As a result, library cataloguing has used a systematic approach to coin and define terminology in a variety of contexts, just like other established fields in the sciences and humanities.

Given the foregoing, it may be claimed right here and now that the objectives of this research study have been met in light of the findings and deliberations presented above.

7.2 Scope of further Research

Future researches may focus on the following areas:

- A study may be undertaken to determine and identify the cause of changes in cataloguing terminology in cataloguing codes.
- Research might be done to create terminology standards for vernacular languages.

Bibliography

- Bhattacharyya, G. (1969). Cataloguing research in India. Bangalore: DRTC.
- Bianchini, C & Guerrini, M. (2009). From bibliographic models to cataloguing rules: remarks on FRBR, ICP, ISBD, and RDA and the relationships between them. *Cataloging & classification quarterly*, 47(2), 105-124.
- Coyle, K.& Hillmann, D. (2007). Resource description and access (RDA): cataloguing rules for the 20th century. *D-lib magazine*.13 (1-2).
- Creider, L.S. (2009). A comparison of the Paris principles and the International Cataloguing Principles. *Cataloguing & classification quarterly*. 47 (6). 583-599
- Crutch, S. J., & Warrington, E. K. (2005). Abstract and concrete concepts have structurally different representational frameworks. *Brain*, 128, 615-627. doi:10.1093/brain/awh349
- Drake, M.A. (Ed.). (2003). Encyclopedia of library and information science (2nd ed.). New York: Marcel Dekker.

- Ghosh, A., & Das, A. (2012). Concept to term approach: a terminological study of catalogue codes. In *Trends and development in library and information science* (pp. 657-668). New Delhi: Zenith Publications. (Published as the proceedings of SAARC Conference for Library and Information Professionals, 2012).
- Gorman, M. (2000). From card catalogues to WebPACs: celebrating cataloguing in the 20th century. Retrieved from http://www.loc.gov/catdir/bibcontrol/gorman_paper.html.
- Gorman, M. (2016). RDA: the emperor's new code. *JLIS.it*. 7 (2). Retrieved from <https://www.jlis.it/article/view/11565/10748>
- Guiding Principles of Terminology Research. (2011). Retrieved January 3, 2012, from <http://www.btb.termiumplus.gc.ca/didacticiel-tutorial/lecon-lesson-2/lecon-lesson-2-1-2-eng.html>
- Harrod, L.M. (2000). Harrod's librarians' glossary and reference book (Ed.9). New York: Gower
- IFLA. (2009). *Functional Requirements of Bibliographic Records*. Retrieved 6 March, 2016, from <http://www.ifla.org/VII/s13/frbr/>
- International Standard Organization. (2000). ISO 1087-1:2000, Terminology work — Vocabulary-Theory and application. Geneva: The Organization.
- International Standard Organization. (2000). ISO 704:2000, Terminology work — Principles and methods. Geneva: The Organization.
- Kent, A., & Lancour, H (Eds.). (1974). *Encyclopedia of library and information science*. New York: Marcel Dekker.
- Knowlton, S.A. (2009). Criticism of cataloguing code reform ,as seen in the pages of Library resources and Technical Services (1957-66). *LTRS*. 53 (1). Retrieved from <https://journals.ala.org/index.php/lrts/article/view/5459/6697>

- Kwong, O. (2011). Measuring Concept Concreteness from the Lexicographic Perspective. Retrieved August 6, 2017, from https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/9c05/a95f69d50c6e08500a587b6_baa71c0c7a8b1.pdf.
- Library of Congress. (2012). *FRBR practicum: applying the concepts*. Retrieved 6 March, 2016, from www.loc.gov/.../FRBR...Practicum/FRBR_Module%202_Practicum.pdf.
- Needham, C.D. (1964). Organizing knowledge in libraries. London: Andre Deutsch.
- Packeiser, K. (2009). The general theory of terminology: a literature review and a critical discussion (Master thesis, Copenhagen Business School). Retrieved from https://studenttheses.cbs.dk/bitstream/handle/10417/655/kirsten_packeiser.pdf?sequence=1
- Prasad, K.N. (1983). Development of terminology in the field of library classification with special reference to Indian school of thought: a case study (Doctoral dissertation). Retrieved from <http://dspace.vidyanidhi.org.in:8080/dspace/handle/2009/4547>
- Principles of Terminology Research. (2007). Retrieved January 3, 2012, from <http://www.btb.gc.ca/btb.php?lang=eng&cont=697>
- Ranganathan, S R. (1955). Headings and canons: comparative study of five catalogue codes. Madras: S Viswanathan.
- Ranganathan, S R. (1967). Prolegomena to library classification. New Delhi: Asia Books
- Ranganathan, S.R. (1989). Prolegomena to library classification (3rd Ed.). New Delhi. Asia Books.
- Ranganathan, S. R. (1955). Standard for lay-out of catalogue code. Annals of library science. 2 (1). 28-32.

- Ranganathan, S.R. & Bhattacharyya, G. (1968). Cataloguing terminology. Lib sc. 5 (3),
- Ranganathan, S.R. & Bhattacharyya, G. (1968). Cataloguing terminology. Lib sc. 5(3).231-263.
- Scheele, M. (1961). Punch-card methods in research and documentation. New York: Intersciences Publisher.
- Sengupta, B. (1964). Cataloguing: its theory and practice. Kolkata: World Press.
- Terminology. Wikipedia. Retrieved October 10, 2010, from <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Terminology>
- Tikku, U.K. (1983). Anglo-American cataloguing rules 1908-1978: a state of the art. Annals of library science and documentation. 30 (3-4). 151-165.
- Wakimoto, J.C. (2009). Scope of the library catalogue in times of transition. Cataloguing & classification quarterly.47 (5). 409-426.
- Welsh, A, & Batley, S. (2012). *Practical calaloguing: AACR, RDA and MARC 21*. London: Facet.

Appendix – 1

Data Collection Sheet

Name of the Catalogue Code:

Term	Definition(s)	Type	UF	USE	Remarks

Appendix -1A

Rank List of Used Terms

Serial No	Term	Occurred in	Total Number of Occurrence	Total Number of Codes	Percentage of Occurrence	Remarks
1	Title	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1	13	13	100	
2	Volume	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1	13	13	100	
3	Entry	12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1	12	13	92.30	
4	Heading	12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1	12	13	92.30	
5	Serial	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2	12	12	92.30	
6	Compiler	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3	11	13	84.61	
7	Main Entry	12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2	11	13	84.61	
8	Series	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3	11	13	84.61	
9	Title Page	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3	11	13	84.61	
10	Editor	13,12 ,11,10,9,8,6,5,4,3	10	13	76.92	
11	Joint Author	12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3	10	13	76.92	

12	Reference	13,12,11,10,9,8,5,3,2,1	10	13	76.92	
13	Added Entry	12 ,11,10,9,8,7,5,3,2	9	13	69.23	
14	Alternative Title	13,12 ,11,10,9,8,7,5,3	9	13	69.23	
15	Binder's Title	12,11,10,8,7,6,4,3,2	9	13	69.23	
16	Corporate Body	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,4	9	13	69.23	
17	Catalogue	12,11,9,8,6,5,4,2	8	13	61.53	
18	Collection	13,12,11,10,9,8,5,3	8	13	61.53	
19	Entry Word	12,11,10,9,8,7,5,3	8	13	61.53	
20	Periodical	9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2	8	13	61.53	
21	Added Title Page	13,12 ,11,10,9,8,5	7	13	53.84	
22	Atlas	13,12 ,11,10,9,8,5	7	13	53.84	
23	Author	13,9,8,5,3,2,1	7	13	53.84	
24	Edition	10,7,6,5,4,3,2	7	13	53.84	
25	Half Title	12,11,10,7,6,4,3	7	13	53.84	
26	Monograph	13,12,11,10,9,8,5	7	13	53.84	
27	Translator	13 ,12,11,10,9,8,5	7	13	53.84	
28	Analytical Entry	12,11,10,9,5,3	6	13	46.15	
29	Collophon	12,11,10,6,4,2	6	13	46.15	

30	Continuation	12,11,10,9,5,3	6	13	46.15	
31	Cover Title	12,11,10,9,8,3	6	13	46.15	
32	Dictionary Catalogue	9,8,7,5,2,1	6	13	46.15	
33	Microopaque	13,12,11,10,9,8	6	13	46.15	
34	Personal Author	12,11,10,7,6,4	6	13	46.15	
35	Plate	13,12,11,10,8,3	6	13	46.15	
36	Running Title	13,12,11,10,7,3	6	13	46.15	
37	Thematic Index	13,12,11,10,9,8	6	13	46.15	
38	Uniform Title	12,11,10,9,8,5	6	13	46.15	
39	Caption Title	13,12 ,11,10,3	5	13	38.46	
40	Conference	13,12 ,11,10,7	5	13	38.46	
41	Macro Form	12,11,10,9,8	5	13	38.46	
42	Main Heading	12,11,10,9,8	5	13	38.46	
43	Manuscript	12,11,10,9,8	5	13	38.46	
44	Subtitle	13,8,7,5,3	5	13	38.46	
45	Tracing	12,11,10,9,5	5	13	38.46	
46	Access Point	13,12 ,11,10	4	13	30.76	
47	Chart	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
48	Chorus Score	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	

49	Close Score	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
50	Collaborator	12,11,10,7.6	4	13	30.76	
51	Collective Title	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
52	Composer	13,9,8,5	4	13	30.76	
53	Diorama	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
54	Facsimile Reproduction	12,11,10,5	4	13	30.76	
55	Flash Card	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
56	Globe	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
57	Issue	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
58	Item	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
59	Key Title	13,12 ,11,10	4	13	30.76	
60	Map	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
61	Microfiche	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
62	Microfilm	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
63	Microform	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
64	Object	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
65	Other Title Information	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
66	Parallel Title	12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
67	Part	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	

68	Radiograph	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
69	Recto	12,11,10,2	4	13	30.76	
70	Score	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
71	Statement Of Responsibility	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
72	Technical Drawing	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
73	Text	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
74	Title Proper	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
75	Work	13,7,6,4	4	13	30.76	
76	Verso	12,11,10,2	4	13	30.76	
77	Adoption (Music)	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
78	Arrangement (Music)	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
79	Artificial Composite Book	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
80	Art Original	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
81	Art Print	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
82	Art Reproduction	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
83	Artefact	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
84	Author Entry	5,3,2	3	13	23.07	
85	Book	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	

86	Book Index Entry	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
87	Broad Side	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
88	Cartographic Material	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
89	Chief Source Of Information	12,11 ,10	3	13	23.07	
90	Class Index Entry	7.6,4	3	13	23.07	
91	Composite Book	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
92	Composite Work	9,8,5	3	13	23.07	
93	Condensed Score	13,12,11	3	13	23.07	
94	Corporate Author	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
95	Cross Reference Entry	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
96	Cross Reference Index Entry	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
97	Explicit	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
98	Fascicle	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
99	Film Strip	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
100	General Material Designation	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
101	Graphic	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
102	Impression	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	

103	Imprint	7,3,2.1	3	13	23.07	
104	Kit	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
105	Mixed Responsibility	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
106	Model	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
107	Motion Picture	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
108	Multimedia Item	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
109	Name- Title Added Entry	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
110	Ordinary Composite Book	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
111	Part (Music)	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
112	Photo Copy	12,9,8	3	13	23.07	
113	Picture	13,12,11	3	13	23.07	
114	Preliminaries	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
115	Realia	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
116	Reference Source	13,12,11	3	13	23.07	
117	Reprint	12,11,10,3	3	13	23.07	
118	Sequel	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
119	Series Entry	5,3,2	3	13	23.07	
120	Series Title Page	13,12,11	3	13	23.07	

121	Shared Responsibility	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
122	Short Title	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
123	Simple Book	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
124	Sound Recording	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
125	Specific Entry	7,2,1	3	13	23.07	
126	Specific Material Designation	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
127	Spine Title	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
128	Supplement	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
129	Supplied Title	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
130	Transparency	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
131	Video Recording	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
132	Accompanying Material	12 ,11	2	13	15.38	
133	Adaptation	13,7	2	13	15.38	
134	Ana	6,4	2	13	15.38	
135	Analytical Description	13,8	2	13	15.38	
136	Analytical Reference	2,1	2	13	15.38	
137	Arranger	9,8	2	13	15.38	
138	Author Title Added Entry	9,8	2	13	15.38	

139	Body Of Entry	9,8	2	13	15.38	
140	Class Entry	2,1	2	13	15.38	
141	Collation	3,2	2	13	15.38	
142	Collector	13,2	2	13	15.38	
143	Contributor	13,7	2	13	15.38	
144	Corporate Entry	5,3	2	13	15.38	
145	Dissertation, Academic	5,3	2	13	15.38	
146	Edition: Other Material	12,11	2	13	15.38	
147	Edition: Unpublished Item	12,11	2	13	15.38	
148	Edition Statement	7,13	2	13	15.38	
149	Extract	7,6	2	13	15.38	
150	Facsimile Edition	9,8	2	13	15.38	
151	Government	13,7	2	13	15.38	
152	Index Entry	6,4	2	13	15.38	
153	Joint Editors	6,4	2	13	15.38	
154	Micro Reproduction	9,8	2	13	15.38	
155	Miniature Score	12,11	2	13	15.38	
156	Multi Part File	11,10	2	13	15.38	

157	Multipart Item	12,11	2	13	15.38	
158	Name Title Reference	12,11	2	13	15.38	
159	Off Print	6,4	2	13	15.38	
160	Partial Title Entry	9,8	2	13	15.38	
161	Periodical Publicational	6,4	2	13	15.38	
162	Phonorecord	9,8	2	13	15.38	
163	Plan	12,11	2	13	15.38	
164	Section	13,12,	2	13	15.38	
165	Section (Serials)	11,10	2	13	15.38	
166	Short Score	13,12	2	13	15.38	
167	Title Entry	5,3	2	13	15.38	
168	Trailer	12,11	2	13	15.38	
169	Unit Card	9,5	2	13	15.38	
170	Vocal Score	12,10	2	13	15.38	
171	Abbreviated Title	13	1	13	7.69	
172	Abridger	13	1	13	7.69	
173	Abridgement	7	1	13	7.69	
174	Abstracting Periodicals	7	1	13	7.69	
175	Alphabetic Subject	2	1	13	7.69	

	Catalogue					
176	Alphabetic Classed Catalogue	2	1	13	7.69	
177	Analysis	2	1	13	7.69	
178	Animator	13	1	13	7.69	
179	Annotator	13	1	13	7.69	
180	Appended	2	1	13	7.69	
181	Arrangement	13	1	13	7.69	
182	Article	7	1	13	7.69	
183	Audio Captioning	13	1	13	7.69	
184	Audio Description	13	1	13	7.69	
185	Author Analytical	7	1	13	7.69	
186	Author Catalogue	2	1	13	7.69	
187	Broadcaster	13	1	13	7.69	
188	Cadenza (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
189	Card Catalogue	2	1	13	7.69	
190	Cartographer	13	1	13	7.69	
191	Cartographic Image	13	1	13	7.69	
192	Cartographic Moving Image	13	1	13	7.69	

193	Cartographic Tactile Image	13	1	13	7.69	
194	Catalogue (Of Books)	3	1	13	7.69	
195	Catch Word Title	5	1	13	7.69	
196	Catalogue (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
197	Chart (Cartography)	12	1	13	7.69	
198	Choreographer	13	1	13	7.69	
199	Choreography (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
200	Classed Catalogue	1	1	13	7.69	
201	Classic	7	1	13	7.69	
202	Classified Catalogue	7	1	13	7.69	
203	Commentator	13	1	13	7.69	
204	Conventional Title	8	1	13	7.69	
205	Concordance (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
206	Consolidated Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
207	Continuation Of (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
208	Contribution	7	1	13	7.69	
209	Contributor Index Entry	6	1	13	7.69	
210	Correspondence	13	1	13	7.69	

211	Conventional Document	7	1	13	7.69	
212	Creator	13	1	13	7.69	
213	Cross Reference	2	1	13	7.69	
214	Curator	13	1	13	7.69	
215	Derivative (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
216	Description	13	1	13	7.69	
217	Descriptive Element	7	1	13	7.69	
218	Devised Title	13	1	13	7.69	
219	Digital Resource	13	1	13	7.69	
220	Document	7	1	13	7.69	
221	Documentation List	7	1	13	7.69	
222	Edition: Book, Pamphlets, Single Sheet, etc.	12	1	13	7.69	
223	Edition: Computer Files	11	1	13	7.69	
224	Edition: Electronic Resource	12	1	13	7.69	
225	Electronic Flash Card	13	1	13	7.69	
226	Electronic Resource	12	1	13	7.69	

227	Element	13	1	13	7.69	
228	Embodied Thought	7	1	13	7.69	
229	Entry Element	7	1	13	7.69	
230	Excerpt	5	1	13	7.69	
231	Explanatory Reference	13	1	13	7.69	
232	Expression	13	1	13	7.69	
233	Explicit	12	1	13	7.69	
234	Extent Of Item	12	1	13	7.69	
235	Facsimile	13	1	13	7.69	
236	Fanciful Title	7	1	13	7.69	
237	Festschrift	5	1	13	7.69	
238	Frontispiece	3	1	13	7.69	
239	Full Score	13	1	13	7.69	
240	Game	13	1	13	7.69	
241	General Added Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
242	General Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
243	Guide (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
244	Hanging Indention	2	1	13	7.69	
245	Host Document	7	1	13	7.69	

246	Illumination	13	1	13	7.69	
247	Illuminator	13	1	13	7.69	
248	Illustrations	3	1	13	7.69	
249	Illustrator	13	1	13	7.69	
250	Imitated As (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
251	Incunabula	7	1	13	7.69	
252	Indexing Periodical	7	1	13	7.69	
253	Individual Entry	2	1	13	7.69	
254	Instruction	7	1	13	7.69	
255	Instructor	13	1	13	7.69	
256	Iteration	13	1	13	7.69	
257	Library Catalogue	7	1	13	7.69	
258	Librettist	5	1	13	7.69	
259	Libretto (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
260	Linguistic Bibliography	7	1	13	7.69	
261	Locus	7	1	13	7.69	
262	Macro Bibliography	7	1	13	7.69	
263	Macro Document	7	1	13	7.69	
264	Manifestation	13	1	13	7.69	

265	Merger Book	7	1	13	7.69	
266	Micro Bibliography	7	1	13	7.69	
267	Micro Document	7	1	13	7.69	
268	Miniature Book	9	1	13	7.69	
269	Monograph Series	5	1	13	7.69	
270	Multifile Item	10	1	13	7.69	
271	Multipart Monograph	13	1	13	7.69	
272	Multi Volume Book	7	1	13	7.69	
273	Name Catalogue	2	1	13	7.69	
274	Narrator	13	1	13	7.69	
275	Number Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
276	Online Resource	13	1	13	7.69	
277	Overhead Projectural	13	1	13	7.69	
278	Overhead Transparency	13	1	13	7.69	
279	Owner	13	1	13	7.69	
280	Partial Title	5	1	13	7.69	
281	Parallel Title Proper	13	1	13	7.69	
282	Parody of (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
283	Personal Catalogue	2	1	13	7.69	

284	Proper Name Title	7	1	13	7.69	
285	Photograph	13	1	13	7.69	
286	Prequel	13	1	13	7.69	
287	Print	13	1	13	7.69	
288	Programme Dissertation	3	1	13	7.69	
289	Pseudonymous Author	7	1	13	7.69	
290	Publisher's Series	5	1	13	7.69	
291	Reprograph	7	1	13	7.69	
292	Reduced Score	13	1	13	7.69	
293	Releated Body	12	1	13	7.69	
294	Reproduction	13	1	13	7.69	
295	Resource	13	1	13	7.69	
296	Reviewing Periodical	7	1	13	7.69	
297	Sacred Work	7	1	13	7.69	
298	Scale	13	1	13	7.69	
299	Seperate	7	1	13	7.69	
300	Source Of Information	13	1	13	7.69	
301	Speaker	13	1	13	7.69	
302	Speaking Book	7	1	13	7.69	

303	Special Cross Reference Entry	6	1	13	7.69	
304	Special Issue	13	1	13	7.69	
305	Specific Added Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
306	Study Score	13	1	13	7.69	
307	Subject Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
308	Subject Heading	2	1	13	7.69	
309	Supplement (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
310	Tactile Text	13	1	13	7.69	
311	Tell-Tell Title	7	1	13	7.69	
312	Term of Availability	13	1	13	7.69	
313	Thematic Catalogue	5	1	13	7.69	
314	Title Analytical	7	1	13	7.69	
315	Title Edition	2	1	13	7.69	
316	Topic Index Entry	4	1	13	7.69	
317	Uniformised Title	7	1	13	7.69	
318	Union Catalogue	7	1	13	7.69	
319	Unit Entry	8	1	13	7.69	
320	Variant Title	13	1	13	7.69	

321	Word Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
-----	------------	---	---	----	------	--

Total terms: 321

100% occurrence: 2 terms (serial no. 1-2)

99%-50%: 25 (serial 3-27)

50%-30%: 49 (serial 28-76)

30%-20%: 54(serial 77-130)

Below 20%: 191 (serial no.131-321)

Appendix-2

Alphabetical List of Used Terms

Sl. No.	Term	Occurred in	Total Number of Occurrence	Total Number of Codes	Percentage of Occurrence	Remarks
1	Abbreviated Title	13	1	13	7.69	
2	Abridger	13	1	13	7.69	
3	Abridgement	7	1	13	7.69	
4	Abstracting Periodicals	7	1	13	7.69	
5	Access Point	13,12 ,11,10	4	13	30.76	
6	Accompanying Material	12 ,11	2	13	15.38	
7	Adaptation	13,7	2	13	15.38	
8	Adoption (Music)	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
9	Added Entry	12 ,11,10,9,8,7, 5,3,2	9	13	69.23	
10	Added Title Page	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 5	7	13	53.84	
11	Alphabetic Subject Catalogue	2	1	13	7.69	

12	Alphabetic Classed Catalogue	2	1	13	7.69	
13	Alternative Title	13,12 ,11,10,9,8,7, 5,3	9	13	69.23	
14	Ana	6,4	2	13	15.38	
15	Analysis	2	1	13	7.69	
16	Analytical Description	13,8	2	13	15.38	
17	Analytical Entry	12,11,10,9,5 ,3	6	13	46.15	
18	Analytical Reference	2,1	2	13	15.38	
19	Animator	13	1	13	7.69	
20	Annotator	13	1	13	7.69	
21	Appended	2	1	13	7.69	
22	Arrangement	13	1	13	7.69	
23	Arrangement (Music)	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
24	Arranger	9,8	2	13	15.38	
25	Article	7	1	13	7.69	
26	Artificial Composite Book	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
27	Art Original	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
28	Art Print	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
29	Art Reproduction	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
30	Artefact	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	

31	Atlas	13,12 ,11,10,9,8,5	7	13	53.84	
32	Audio Captioning	13	1	13	7.69	
33	Audio Description	13	1	13	7.69	
34	Author	13,9,8,5,3,2, 1	7	13	53.84	
35	Author Analytical	7	1	13	7.69	
36	Author Catalogue	2	1	13	7.69	
37	Author Entry	5,3,2	3	13	23.07	
38	Author Title Added Entry	9,8	2	13	15.38	
39	Binder's Title	12,11,10,8,7 ,6,4,3,2	10	13	76.92	
40	Body Of Entry	9,8	2	13	15.38	
41	Book	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
42	Book Index Entry	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
43	Broadcaster	13	1	13	7.69	
44	Broad Side	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
45	Cadenza (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
46	Caption Title	13,12 ,11,10,3	5	13	38.46	
47	Card Catalogue	2	1	13	7.69	
48	Cartographer	13	1	13	7.69	
49	Cartographic Image	13	1	13	7.69	

50	Cartographic Material	12 ,11,10	3	13	23.07	
51	Cartographic Moving Image	13	1	13	7.69	
52	Cartographic Tactile Image	13	1	13	7.69	
53	Catalogue	12,11,9,8,6, 5,4,2	8	13	61.53	
54	Catalogue (Of Books)	3	1	13	7.69	
55	Catch Word Title	5	1	13	7.69	
56	Catalogue (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
57	Chart	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
58	Chart (Cartography)	12	1	13	7.69	
59	Chief Source of Information	12,11 ,10	3	13	23.07	
60	Choreographer	13	1	13	7.69	
61	Choreography (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
62	Chorus Score	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
63	Class Entry	2,1	2	13	15.38	
64	Class Index Entry	7.6,4	3	13	23.07	
65	Classed Catalogue	1	1	13	7.69	
66	Classic	7	1	13	7.69	

67	Classified Catalogue	7	1	13	7.69	
68	Close Score	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
69	Collaborator	12,11,10,7.6	4	13	30.76	
70	Collation	3,2	2	13	15.38	
70	Collection	13,12,11,10,9,8,5,3	8	13	61.53	
72	Collective Title	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
73	Collector	13,2	2	13	15.38	
74	Colophon	12,11,10,6,4,2	6	13	46.15	
75	Commentator	13	1	13	7.69	
76	Compiler	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3	11	13	84.61	
77	Composer	13,9,8,5	4	13	30.76	
78	Composite Book	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
79	Composite Work	9,8,5	3	13	23.07	
80	Conventional Title	8	1	13	7.69	
81	Concordance (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
82	Condensed Score	13,12,11	3	13	23.07	
83	Conference	13,12,11,10,7	5	13	38.46	
84	Consolidated Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
85	Continuation	12,11,10,9,5,3	6	13	46.15	

86	Continuation Of (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
87	Contribution	7	1	13	7.69	
88	Contributor	13,7	2	13	15.38	
89	Contributor Index Entry	6	1	13	7.69	
90	Corporate Author	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
91	Corporate Body	13,12,11,10, 9,8,7,6,4	9	13	69.23	
92	Corporate Entry	5,3	2	13	15.38	
93	Correspondence	13	1	13	7.69	
94	Conventional Document	7	1	13	7.69	
95	Cover Title	12,11,10,9,8 ,3	6	13	46.15	
96	Creator	13	1	13	7.69	
97	Cross Reference	2	1	13	7.69	
98	Cross Reference Entry	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
99	Cross Reference Index Entry	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
100	Curator	13	1	13	7.69	
101	Derivative (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
102	Descriptive Element	7	1	13	7.69	
103	Devised Title	13	1	13	7.69	

104	Dictionary Catalogue	9,8,7,5,2,1	6	13	46.15	
105	Digital Resource	13	1	13	7.69	
106	Diorama	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
107	Dissertation, Academic	5,3	2	13	15.38	
108	Document	7	1	13	7.69	
109	Documentation List	7	1	13	7.69	
110	Edition	10,7,6,5,4,3, 2	7	13	53.84	
111	Edition Statement	7,13	2	13	15.38	
112	Edition: Book, Pamphlets, Single Sheet, etc.	12	1	13	7.69	
113	Edition: Computer Files	11	1	13	7.69	
114	Edition: Electronic Resource	12	1	13	7.69	
115	Edition: Other Material	12,11	2	13	15.38	
116	Edition: Unpublished Item	12,11	2	13	15.38	
117	Editor	13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 6, 5, 4, 3	10	13	76.92	

118	Electronic Flash Card	13	1	13	7.69	
119	Electronic Resource	12	1	13	7.69	
120	Element	13	1	13	7.69	
121	Embodied Thought	7	1	13	7.69	
122	Entry	12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1	12	13	92.30	
123	Entry Element	7	1	13	7.69	
124	Entry Word	12,11,10,9,8,7,5,3	8	13	61.53	
125	Excerpt	5	1	13	7.69	
126	Extract	7,6	2	13	15.38	
127	Explanatory Reference	13	1	13	7.69	
128	Expression	13	1	13	7.69	
129	Explicit	12	1	13	7.69	
130	Extent Of Item	12	1	13	7.69	
131	Facsimile	13	1	13	7.69	
132	Facsimile Edition	9,8	2	13	15.38	
133	Facsimile Reproduction	12,11,10,5	4	13	30.76	
134	Fascicle	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
135	Fanciful title	7	1	13	7.69	
136	Festschrift	5	1	13	7.69	
137	Film Strip	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	

138	Flash Card	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
139	Frontispiece	3	1	13	7.69	
140	Full Score	13	1	13	7.69	
141	Game	13	1	13	7.69	
142	General Added Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
143	General Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
144	General Material Designation	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
145	Globe	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
146	Government	13,7	2	13	15.38	
147	Graphic	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
148	Guide (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
149	Half Title	12,11,10,7,6,4,3	7	13	53.84	
150	Hanging Indention	2	1	13	7.69	
151	Heading	12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1	12	13	92.30	
152	Host Document	7	1	13	7.69	
153	Illumination	13	1	13	7.69	
154	Illuminator	13	1	13	7.69	
155	Illustrations	3	1	13	7.69	
156	Illustrator	13	1	13	7.69	
157	Imitated As (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
158	Impression	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
159	Imprint	7,3,2.1	3	13	23.07	

160	Incunabula	7	1	13	7.69	
161	Index Entry	6,4	2	13	15.38	
162	Indexing Periodical	7	1	13	7.69	
163	Individual Entry	2	1	13	7.69	
164	Instruction	7	1	13	7.69	
165	Instructor	13	1	13	7.69	
166	Issue	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
167	Item	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
168	Iteration	13	1	13	7.69	
169	Joint Author	12,11,10,9,8 ,7,6,5,4,3	10	13	76.92	
170	Joint Editors	6,4	2	13	15.38	
171	Key Title	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
172	Kit	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
173	Library Catalogue	7	1	13	7.69	
174	Librettist	5	1	13	7.69	
175	Libretto (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
176	Linguistic Bibliography	7	1	13	7.69	
177	Locus	7	1	13	7.69	
178	Macro Bibliography	7	1	13	7.69	
179	Macro Document	7	1	13	7.69	
180	Macro Form	12,11,10,9,8	5	13	38.46	
181	Main Entry	12,11,10,9,8 ,7,6,5,4,3,2	11	13	84.61	
182	Main Heading	12,11,10,9,8	5	13	38.46	

183	Manifestation	13	1	13	7.69	
184	Manuscript	12,11,10,9,8	5	13	38.46	
185	Map	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
186	Merger Book	7	1	13	7.69	
187	Micro Bibliography	7	1	13	7.69	
188	Micro Document	7	1	13	7.69	
190	Microfiche	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
	Microfilm	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
191	Microform	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
192	Micro opaque	13,12,11,10, 9,8	6	13	46.15	
193	Micro Reproduction	9,8	2	13	15.38	
194	Minatare Book	9	1	13	7.69	
195	Miniature Score	12,11	2	13	15.38	
196	Mixed Responsibility	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
197	Model	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
198	Monograph	13,12,11,10, 9,8,5	7	13	53.84	
199	Monograph Series	5	1	13	7.69	
200	Motion Picture	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
201	Multifile Item	10	1	13	7.69	
202	Multimedia Item	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
203	Multi Part File	11,10	2	13	15.38	
204	Multipart Item	12,11	2	13	15.38	

205	Multipart Monograph	13	1	13	7.69	
206	Multi Volume Book	7	1	13	7.69	
207	Name Catalogue	2	1	13	7.69	
208	Name- Title Added Entry	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
209	Name Title Reference	12,11	2	13	15.38	
210	Narrator	13	1	13	7.69	
211	Number Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
212	Object	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
213	Off Print	6,4	2	13	15.38	
214	Online Resource	13	1	13	7.69	
215	Ordinary Composite Book	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
216	Other Title Information	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
217	Overhead Transparency	13	1	13	7.69	
218	Owner	13	1	13	7.69	
219	Partial Title	5	1	13	7.69	
220	Partial Title Entry	9,8	2	13	15.38	
221	Parallel Title	12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
222	Parallel Title Proper	13	1	13	7.69	
223	Parody Of (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	

224	Part	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
225	Part (Music)	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
226	Periodical	9,8,7,6,5,4,3 ,2	8	13	61.53	
227	Periodical Publication	6,4	2	13	15.38	
228	Personal Author	12,11,10,7,6 ,4	6	13	46.15	
229	Personal Catalogue	2	1	13	7.69	
230	Proper Name Title	7	1	13	7.69	
231	Phonorecord	9,8	2	13	15.38	
232	Photo Copy	12,9,8	3	13	23.07	
233	Photograph	13	1	13	7.69	
234	Picture	13,12,11	3	13	23.07	
235	Plan	12,11	2	13	15.38	
236	Plate	13,12,11,10, 8,3	6	13	46.15	
237	Preferred Name	13	1	13	7.69	
38	Preliminaries	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
239	Prequel	13	1	13	7.69	
240	Print	13	1	13	7.69	
241	Programme Dissertation	3	1	13	7.69	
242	Pseudonymous Author	7	1	13	7.69	
243	Publisher's Series	5	1	13	7.69	

244	Radiograph	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
245	Reprograph	7	1	13	7.69	
246	Realia	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
247	Recto	12,11,10,2	4	13	30.76	
248	Reduced Score	13	1	13	7.69	
249	Reference	13,12,11,10, 9,8,5,3,2,1	10	13	76.92	
250	Reference Source	13,12,11	3	13	23.07	
251	Related Body	12	1	13	7.69	
252	Reprint	12,11,10,3	3	13	23.07	
253	Reproduction	13	1	13	7.69	
254	Resource	13	1	13	7.69	
255	Reviewing Periodical	7	1	13	7.69	
256	Running Title	13,12,11,10, 7,3	6	13	46.15	
257	Sacred Work	7	1	13	7.69	
258	Scale	13	1	13	7.69	
259	Score	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
260	Section	13,12,	2	13	15.38	
261	Section (Serials)	11,10	2	13	15.38	
262	Sequel	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
263	Serial	13,12,11,10, 9,8,7,6,5,4,3 ,2	12	13	76.92	
264	Series	13,12,11,10, 9,8,7,6,5,4,3	11	13	84.61	
265	Series Title Page	13,12,11	3	13	23.07	

266	Separate	7	1	13	7.69	
267	Series Entry	5,3,2	3	13	23.07	
268	Shared Responsibility	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
269	Short Score	13,12	2	13	15.38	
270	Short Title	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
271	Simple Book	7,6,4	3	13	23.07	
272	Sound Recording	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
273	Source Of Information	13	1	13	7.69	
274	Speaker	13	1	13	7.69	
275	Speaking Book	7	1	13	7.69	
276	Special Cross Reference Entry	6	1	13	7.69	
277	Special Issue	13	1	13	7.69	
278	Specific Added Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
279	Specific Entry	7,2,1	3	13	23.07	
280	Specific Material Designation	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
281	Spine Title	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
282	Statement Of Responsibility	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
283	Study Score	13	1	13	7.69	
284	Subtitle	13,8,7,5,3	5	13	38.46	
285	Subject Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
286	Subject Heading	2	1	13	7.69	
287	Supplement	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	

288	Supplement (Work)	13	1	13	7.69	
289	Supplied Title	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
290	Tactile Text	13	1	13	7.69	
291	Technical Drawing	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
292	Tell-Tell Title	7	1	13	7.69	
293	Term Of Availability	13	1	13	7.69	
294	Text	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
295	Thematic Catalogue	5	1	13	7.69	
296	Thematic Index	13,12,11,10, 9,8	6	13	46.15	
297	Title	13,12,11,10, 9,8,7,6,5,4,3 ,2,1	13	13	100	
298	Title Analytical	7	1	13	7.69	
299	Title Edition	2	1	13	7.69	
300	Title Entry	5,3	2	13	15.38	
301	Title Page	13,12,11,10, 9,8,7,6,5,4,3	11	13	76.92	
302	Title Proper	13,12,11,10	4	13	30.76	
303	Topic Index Entry	4	1	13	7.69	
304	Tracing	12,11,10,9,5	5	13	38.46	
305	Trailer	12,11	2	13	15.38	
306	Translator	13 ,12,11,10,9, 8,5	7	13	53.84	

307	Transparency	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
308	Uniform Title	12,11,10,9,8 ,5	6	13	46.15	
309	Uniformised Title	7	1	13	7.69	
310	Unit Card	9,5	2	13	15.38	
311	Union Catalogue	7	1	13	7.69	
312	Unit Entry	8	1	13	7.69	
313	Verso	12,11,10,2	4	13	30.76	
314	Variant Title	13	1	13	7.69	
315	Video Recording	12,11,10	3	13	23.07	
316	Vocal Score	12,10	2	13	15.38	
317	Volume	13,12,11,10, 9,8,7,6,5,4,3 ,2,1	13	13	100	
318	Word Entry	7	1	13	7.69	
319	Work	13,7,6,4	4	13	30.76	

Appendix – 3

Alphabetical List of Category-wise Used Terms

Sl. No.	Term	Category	Occurring in Codes
1	Abridger	A	13
2	Animator	A	13
3	Annotator	A	13
4	Arranger	A	9,8
5	Author	A	13,9,8,5,3,2,1
6	Broadcaster	A	13
7	Cartographer	A	13
8	Choreographer	A	13
9	Collaborator	A	12,11,10,7,6
10	Collector	A	13,2
11	Commentator	A	13
12	Compiler	A	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3
13	Composer	A	13,9,8,5
14	Conference	A	13,12 ,11,10,7
15	Contributor	A	13,7
16	Corporate Author	A	7,6,4
17	Corporate Body	A	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,4
18	Creator	A	13
19	Curator	A	13
20	Editor	A	13,12 ,11,10,9,8,6,5,4,3
21	Government	A	13,7
22	Illuminator	A	13
23	Illustrator	A	13
24	Institution	A	7
25	Instructor	A	13
26	Joint Author	A	12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3
27	Joint Editors	A	6,4

28	Librettist	A	5
29	Mixed Responsibility	A	12,11,10
30	Narrator	A	13
31	Owner	A	13
32	Personal Author	A	12,11,10,7,6,4
33	Pseudonymous Author	A	7
34	Related Body	A	12
35	Shared Responsibility	A	12,11,10
36	Speaker	A	13
37	Translator	A	13 ,12,11,10,9,8,5
38	Alphabetic Subject Catalogue	C	2
39	Alphabetic Classed Catalogue	C	2
40	Author Catalogue	C	2
41	Card Catalogue	C	2
42	Catalogue	C	12,11,9,8,6,5,4,2
43	Catalogue (Work)	C	13
44	Catalogue (of Books)	C	3
45	Classed Catalogue	C	1
46	Classified Catalogue	C	7
47	Dictionary Catalogue	C	9,8,7,5,2,1
48	Library Catalogue	C	7
49	Name Catalogue	C	2
50	Personal Catalogue	C	2
51	Thematic Catalogue	C	5
52	Union Catalogue	C	7
53	Abridgement	D	7
54	Abstracting Periodicals	D	7
55	Accompanying Material	D	12 ,11
56	Adaptation	D	13,7
57	Added Title Page	D	13,12 ,11,10,9,8,5

58	Adoption (Music)	D	12 ,11,10
59	Ana	D	6,4
60	Appended	D	2
61	Arrangement	D	13
62	Arrangement (Music)	D	12 ,11,10
63	Art Original	D	12 ,11,10
64	Art Print	D	12 ,11,10
65	Art Reproduction	D	12,11,10
66	Artefact	D	12,11,10
67	Article	D	7
68	Artificial Composite Book	D	7,6,4
69	Atlas	D	13,12 ,11,10,9,8,5
70	Book	D	7,6,4
71	Broad Side	D	12 ,11,10
72	Cadenza (Work)	D	13
73	Cartographic Image	D	13
74	Cartographic Material	D	12 ,11,10
75	Cartographic Moving Image	D	13
76	Cartographic Tactile Image	D	13
77	Chart	D	13,12,11,10
78	Chart (Cartography)	D	12
79	Chief Source of Information	D	12,11 ,10
80	Choreography (Work)	D	13
81	Chorus Score	D	13,12,11,10
82	Classic	D	7
83	Close Score	D	13,12,11,10
84	Collection	D	13,12,11,10,9,8,5,3
85	Composite Book	D	7,6,4
86	Composite Work	D	9,8,5
87	Concordance (Work)	D	13
88	Condensed Score	D	13,12,11
89	Continuation	D	12,11,10,9,5,3

90	Continuation of (Work)	D	13
91	Contribution	D	7
92	Conventional Document	D	7
93	Correspondence	D	13
94	Derivative (Work)	D	13
95	Digital Resource	D	13
96	Diorama	D	13,12,11,10
97	Dissertation, Academic	D	5,3
98	Document	D	7
99	Documentation List	D	7
100	Electronic Flash Card	D	13
101	Electronic Resource	D	12
102	Embodied Thought	D	7
103	Excerpt	D	5
104	Expression	D	13
105	Extract	D	7,6
106	Facsimile	D	13
107	Facsimile Reproduction	D	12,11,10,5
108	Fascicle	D	12,11,10
109	Festchrift	D	5
110	Film Strip	D	12,11,10
111	Flash Card	D	13,12,11,10
112	Frontispiece	D	3
113	Full Score	D	13
114	Game	D	13
115	Globe	D	13,12,11,10
116	Graphic	D	12,11,10
117	Guide (Work)	D	13
118	Host Document	D	7
119	Illumination	D	13
120	Illustrations	D	3
121	Imitated As (Work)	D	13

122	Impression	D	12,11,10
123	Incunabula	D	7
124	Indexing Periodical	D	7
125	Issue	D	13,12,11,10
126	Item	D	13,12,11,10
127	Iteration	D	13
128	Kit	D	12,11,10
129	Libretto (Work)	D	13
130	Linguistic Bibliography	D	7
131	Macro Bibliography	D	7
132	Macro Document	D	7
133	Macro Form	D	12,11,10,9,8
134	Manifestation	D	13
135	Manuscript	D	12,11,10,9,8
136	Map	D	13,12,11,10
137	Merger Book	D	7
138	Micro Bibliography	D	7
139	Micro Document	D	7
140	Micro Reproduction	D	9,8
141	Microfiche	D	13,12,11,10
142	Microfilm	D	13,12,11,10
143	Microform	D	13,12,11,10
144	Micro opaque	D	13,12,11,10,9,8
145	Minatare Book	D	9
146	Miniature Score	D	12,11
147	Model	D	12,11,10
148	Monograph	D	13,12,11,10,9,8,5
149	Monograph Series	D	5
150	Motion Picture	D	12,11,10
151	Multi Part File	D	11,10
152	Multi Volume Book	D	7
153	Multifile Item	D	10

154	Multimedia Item	D	12,11,10
155	Multipart Item	D	12,11
156	Multipart Monograph	D	13
157	Object	D	13,12,11,10
158	Off Print	D	6,4
159	Online Resource	D	13
160	Ordinary Composite Book	D	7,6,4
161	Overhead Projectural	D	13
162	Overhead Transparency	D	13
163	Parody Of (Work)	D	13
164	Part	D	13,12,11,10
165	Part (Music)	D	12,11,10
166	Periodical Publication	D	6,4
167	Periodical	D	9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2
168	Phonorecord	D	9,8
169	Photo Copy	D	12,9,8
170	Photograph	D	13
171	Picture	D	13,12,11
172	Plan	D	12,11
173	Plate	D	13,12,11,10,8,3
174	Prequel	D	13
175	Print	D	13
176	Programme Dissertation	D	3
177	Publisher's Series	D	5
178	Radiograph	D	13,12,11,10
179	Realia	D	12,11,10
180	Reduced Score	D	13
181	Reference Source	D	13,12,11
182	Reprint	D	12,11,10,3
183	Reproduction	D	13
184	Reprograph	D	7
185	Resource	D	13

186	Reviewing Periodical	D	7
187	Sacred Work	D	7
188	Scale	D	13
189	Score	D	13,12,11,10
190	Section	D	13,12,
191	Section (Serials)	D	11,10
192	Separate	D	7
193	Sequel	D	12,11,10
194	Serial	D	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2
195	Series	D	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3
196	Short Score	D	13,12
197	Simple Book	D	7,6,4
198	Sound Recording	D	12,11,10
199	Source Of Information	D	13
200	Speaking Book	D	7
201	Special Issue	D	13
202	Study Score	D	13
203	Supplement	D	12,11,10
204	Supplement (Work)	D	13
205	Tactile Text	D	13
206	Technical Drawing	D	13,12,11,10
207	Text	D	13,12,11,10
208	Thematic Index	D	13,12,11,10,9,8
209	Trailer	D	12,11
210	Transparency	D	12,11,10
211	Vedio Recording	D	12,11,10
212	Vocal Score	D	12,10
213	Volume	D	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1
214	Work	D	13,7,6,4
215	Added Entry	E	12 ,11,10,9,8,7,5,3,2
216	Analysis	E	2
217	Analytical Description	E	13,8

218	Analytical Entry	E	12,11,10,9,5,3
219	Analytical Reference	E	2,1
220	Audio Description	E	13
221	Author Analytical	E	7
222	Author Entry	E	5,3,2
223	Author Title Added Entry	E	9,8
224	Body Of Entry	E	9,8
225	Book Index Entry	E	7,6,4
226	Class Entry	E	2,1
227	Class Index Entry	E	7,6,4
228	Consolidated Entry	E	7
229	Contributor Index Entry	E	6
230	Corporate Entry	E	5,3
231	Cross Reference	E	2
232	Cross Reference Entry	E	7,6,4
233	Cross Reference Index Entry	E	7,6,4
234	Description	E	13
235	Entry	E	12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1
236	Explanatory Reference	E	13
237	General Added Entry	E	7
238	General Entry	E	7
239	Index Entry	E	6,4
240	Individual Entry	E	2
241	Main Entry	E	12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2
242	Name Title Reference	E	12,11
243	Name- Title Added Entry	E	12,11,10
244	Number Entry	E	7
245	Partial Title Entry	E	9,8
246	Preferred Name	E	13
247	Reference	E	13,12,11,10,9,8,5,3,2,1
248	Series Entry	E	5,3,2

249	Special Cross Reference Entry	E	6
250	Specific Added Entry	E	7
251	Specific Entry	E	7,2,1
252	Subject Entry	E	7
253	Title Analytical	E	7
254	Title Entry	E	5,3
255	Topic Index Entry	E	4
256	Unit Card	E	9,5
257	Unit Entry	E	8
258	Word Entry	E	7
259	Edition	Ed	10,7,6,5,4,3,2
260	Edition: Electronic Resource	Ed	12
261	Edition: Other Material	Ed	12,11
262	Edition: Unpublished Item	Ed	12,11
263	Edition: Computer Files	Ed	11
264	Edition: Book, Pamphlets, Single Sheet, etc	Ed	12
265	Facsimile Edition	Ed	9,8
266	Title Edition	Ed	2
267	Access Point	H	13,12 ,11,10
268	Descriptive Element	H	7
269	Entry Element	H	7
270	Entry Word	H	12,11,10,9,8,7,5,3
271	Heading	H	12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1
272	Main Heading	H	12,11,10,9,8
273	Subject Heading	H	2
274	Colophon	PP	12,11,10,6,4,2
275	Explicit	PP	12,11,10
276	Preliminaries	PP	12,11,10
277	Recto	PP	12,11,10,2

278	Series Title Page	PP	13,12,11
279	Title Page	PP	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3
280	Verso	PP	12,11,10,2
281	Collation	SE	3,2
282	Edition Statement	SE	7,13
283	Element	SE	13
284	Extent Of Item	SE	12
285	General Material Designation	SE	12,11,10
286	Hanging Indention	SE	2
287	Imprint	SE	7,3,2.1
288	Locus	SE	7
289	Other Title Information	SE	13,12,11,10
290	Parallel Title Proper	SE	13
291	Specific Material Designation	SE	12,11,10
292	Statement Of Responsibility	SE	13,12,11,10
293	Term Of Availability	SE	13
294	Tracing	SE	12,11,10,9,5
295	Abbreviated Title	T	13
296	Alternative Title	T	13,12 ,11,10,9,8,7,5,3
297	Binder's Title	T	12,11,10,8,7,6,4,3,2
298	Caption Title	T	13,12 ,11,10,3
299	Catch Word Title	T	5
300	Collective Title	T	13,12,11,10
301	Conventional Title	T	8
302	Cover Title	T	12,11,10,9,8,3
303	Devised Title	T	13
304	Fancifultitle	T	7
305	Half Title	T	12,11,10,7,6,4,3
306	Key Title	T	13,12 ,11,10
307	Parallel Title	T	12,11,10

308	Partial Title	T	5
309	Proper Name Title	T	7
310	Running Title	T	13,12,11,10,7,3
311	Series Title Page	T	13
312	Short Title	T	7,6,4
313	Spine Title	T	12,11,10
314	Subtitle	T	13,8,7,5,3
315	Supplied Title	T	12,11,10
316	Tell-Tell Title	T	7
317	Title	T	13,12,11,10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1
318	Title Proper	T	13,12,11,10
319	Uniform Title	T	12,11,10,9,8,5
320	Uniformised Title	T	7
321	Variant Title	T	13

Where A = Author, C = Catalogue, D = Document, E = Entry, Ed = Edition, H = Heading,
PP = Preliminary Pages, SE = Sections of Entry, T = Title

Appendix-4

Rank List of Unused Terms

Sl. No.	Rank	Term	Replaced by	Frequency as Un-Used Term	Frequency As Used Term
1	1	Cross Reference	Reference	7	1
2	2	Secondary Entry	Added Entry	6	0
3	3	Filing Title	Uniform Title	5	0
4	4	Monograph Series	Series 1	4	1
5	4	Author	Personal Author, Corporate Author	4	7
6	6	Standard Title	Uniform Title	3	0
7	6	Shared Authorship	Shared Responsibility	3	0
8	6	Reissue	Issue, Reprint	3	0
9	6	Mixed Authorship	Mixed Responsibility	3	0
10	6	Full Score	Score	3	1
11	6	Cinefilm	Motion Picture	3	0
12	6	Broadsheet	Broadside	3	0
13	13	Subject Analytical	Cross Reference Entry	2	0
14	13	Transcription (Music)	Adaptation (Music), Arrangement (Music)	2	0
15	13	Thesis	Dissertation, Academic	2	0
16	13	Printing	Facsimile Reproduction, Impression, Issue, Reprint	2	0
17	13	Plan (Cartography)	Map	2	0
18	13	Phonorecord	Sound Recording	2	2

19	13	Overhead Projectual	Transparency	2	1
20	13	Multivolume Monograph	Multipart Item	2	0
21	13	Machine Readable Data File (MRDF)	Computer File	2	0
22	13	Editor	Author	2	10
23	13	Conventional Title	Uniform Title	2	0
24	13	Audio Recording	Sound Recording	2	0
25	25	Subject Entry	Entry	1	1
26	25	Short Score	Condensed Score	1	2
27	25	Separate	Reprint 2	1	1
28	25	Resource, Electronic	Electronic Resource	1	0
29	25	Related Music	Adaptation Music	1	0
30	25	Reduced Score	Condensed Score	1	1
31	25	Overhead Projectual	Overhead Transparency	1	0
32	25	Microform	Microreproduction	1	4
33	25	Mechanical Drawing	Technical Drawing	1	0
34	25	Half Title	Title	1	7
35	25	Filing Word	Entry Word	1	0
36	25	Extract	Excerpt	1	2
37	25	Engineering Drawing	Technical Drawing	1	0
38	25	Electronic Flash Card	Flash Card	1	1
39	25	Conjoint Authorship	Joint Authorship	1	0
40	25	Computer File	Electronic Resource	1	0
41	25	Collector	Author	1	2
42	25	Close Score	Condensed Score	1	0
43	25	Chart (Cartography)	Map	1	1
44	25	Bastard Title	Half Title	1	0

45	25	Author-Title Reference	Name-Title Reference	1	0
46	25	Author-Title Added Entry	Name-Title Added Entry	1	2
47	25	Audio Captioning	Audio Description	1	1
48	25	Analytical	Analytical Reference	1	0
49	25	Analysis	Analytical Reference	1	1

Impression-Among 49 terms, most of them were not used as “preferred terms” in other codes. But some of the terms are used as “preferred terms” in another codes. Interestingly the term Editor *is used 10* times as preferred terms but 2 times as non-preferred term. In RDC 1876 and 1904, the term Editor was replaced by Author which indicates the equivalence of these two concepts at the beginning of the history of catalogue codes. For some other terms also the transformation from “preferred to non-preferred” also occur. But most of the terms remain “non-preferred” for all the times.

Appendix - 4A

Occurrence Pattern of Terms

A. Author Related Terms

Author related terms have appeared at different times as the responsibility of a particular work distributed among different entities-corporate or personal. The author related term and their occurrences are found as follows. The code number of the terms are mentioned in parenthesis-

A1. Occurred Once

Abridger (13), Animator (13), Annotator (13), broadcaster (13), cartographer (13), Choreographer (13), Commentator (13), creator (13), curator (13), illuminator (13), Illustrator (13), institution (7), librettist (5), narrator (13), owner (13), related body (12), speaker (13)

A2. Occurred Two Times

Arranger (8, 9), Collector (2, 13), Contributor (7, 13), Government (7, 13), Joint editor (4, 6).

A3. Occurred Three Times

Corporate author (4, 6, 7), mixed responsibility (10, 11, 12), shared responsibility (10, 11, 12)

A4. More Than Three Times

Author (1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 9, 13), Collaborator (6, 7, 10, 11, 12), compiler (3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), composer (5, 8, 9, 13), conference (7, 10, 11, 12, 13), corporate body (4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), editor (3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), joint author (3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12), personal author (4, 6, 7, 10, 11, 12), translator (5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13)

A5. Discussion

- i. The terms occurred once are mostly included in RDA 2016(code 13). This means RDA 2016 has coined many new terms related to authors. The term Creator has been used in more generic sense that includes authorship also. The term **librettist** occurred only once in ALA1949 and found to be obsolete in further codes. This means it was not so much accepted to the later cataloguing agencies. The terms related body used in 2002 by AACR (code12) but not accepted in RDA. The term institution only used in CCC 5 1965 (code7) and surprisingly not used in the glossary of other codes though almost all the codes used the term at their rules but not defined it.
- ii. For terms occurred twice-some patterns are noticed as follows-

Occurred two successive codes – Arranger (8, 9), Occurred at the codes having much difference at the time of publication – Contributor (7, 13), government (7, 13). It may be noted that these two terms occurred in two code one of them is a classified one (CCC5) and another is a dictionary catalogue code. This proves the importance of the term as it was defined in 1965 and in 2016 also. The term Joint editor used in CCC1 and 3, but in later codes even in CCC5 it was omitted. It was considered under the purview of Collaborator and hence unused in later cases.

- iii. For the terms occurred more than three times many variations of occurrence are observed. The term Author occurs in the first code and the last code and in between these two it occurs 5 times. CCCs used the term Personal author instead of Author, which is one of the variations of coining the same term differently. The terms collaborator, composer etc were omitted in different times by different codes but reappeared again in later times. The term Compiler is being used for code number three (1908) and still being in use as it last appeared in RDA2016. Some terms like Conference, corporate body, personal author, etc. were first used by CCCs and were continuously being used by later codes. So Ranganathan may be considered as a pioneer in these cases of term use.

B. Catalogue Related Term

The numbers in parentheses indicate the code numbers

B1. Occurred Once

Alphabetic subject catalogue (2), Alphabetic classed catalogue (2), Author catalogue (2), Card catalogue (2), Catalogue (work) (13), Catalogue (of books) (3), Classed catalogue (1), Classified catalogue (7), Library catalogue (7), Name catalogue (2), Personal catalogue (2), Thematic catalogue (5), Union catalogue (7)

B2. Occurred Two Times

No terms found

B3. Occurred More Than Once

Catalogue (2, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 11, 12), Dictionary catalogue (1, 2, 5, 7, 8, 9).

B4. Discussion

Some terms like Alphabetic subject catalogue, Alphabetic classed catalogue, Author catalogue, Card catalogue, Personal catalogue etc are used very earlier times as they are used in RDC1904 only. The terms were not included in further catalogue codes because they were considered under the purview of more generic terms in later times e.g. Personal catalogue may be considered under the purview of subject catalogue where a person may be considered as a subject of study. Similarly Alphabetic classed catalogue and Classed catalogue not used by the later codes probably due to the facts that the concepts related to these terms became obsolete in later times. The terms like Classified catalogue, Library catalogue, Union catalogue etc are used by CCC5 in 1965 and used only once, though all the concepts are still relevant. Surprisingly, the first edition of the Classified catalogue code was published in 1934 but the term Classified catalogue first included in the fifth edition of CCC.

C. Document Related Terms

The document related terms may be classified as follows. The numbers in parenthesis indicate the occurring code numbers.-

C1. Occurred Once

Abridgement (7), Abstracting periodicals (7), Append (2), Arrangement (13), Article (7), Cadenza (work) (13), Cartographic image (13), Cartographic moving image (13), Cartographic tactile image (13), Chart (cartography) (12), Choreography (work) (13), Classic (7), Concordance (13), Continuation of work (13), Contribution (7), Conventional document (13), Correspondence (13), Derivative work (13), Digital resource (13), Document (7), Documentation list (7), Electronic flash card (13), Electronic resource (12), Embodied thought (7), Excerpt (5), Expression (13), Facsimile (13), Festschrift (5), Frontispiece (3), Full score (13), Game (13), Guide (work) (13), Multifile item (10), Multipart monograph (13), Online resource (13), Overhead transparency (13), Parody of work (13), Photograph (13), Prequel (13),

Print (13), Programme dissertation (3), Reduced score (13), reproduction (13), Reprograph (7), Reviewing (7), Resource (13), host document (7), Illumination (13), Illustration (3), Imitated as (13), Incunabula (7), Indexing periodical (7), Iteration (13), libretto (work) (13), Linguistic bibliography (7), Macro bibliography (7), Macro document (7), Manifestation (13), Merger book (7), Micro bibliography (7), Micro document (7), Miniature book (9), Multivolumed book (7), Sacred works (7), Scale (13), Separate (7), Source of information (13), Speaking book (7), Special issue (13), Study score (13), supplement (work) (13) , Tactile text (13).

C2. Occurred Twice

Accompanying materials (11, 12), Adaptation (7, 13), Ana (4, 6), Dissertation, Academic (3, 5), extract (6, 7), Microreproduction (8, 9), Miniature score (11, 12), Multipart file (10, 11), Multipart item (11, 12), Off print (4, 6), Periodical publication (4, 6), Phonorecord (8, 9), plan (11, 12), Section (12, 13), Section (serials) (10, 11), Short score (12, 13), Trailer (11, 12), Vocal score (10, 12).

C3. Occurred More Than Two Times

Added title page (5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), Adaptation (music) (10, 11, 12), Arrangement (music) (10, 11, 12), Art original (10, 11, 12), Art print (10, 11, 12), Art reproduction (10, 11, 12), Artefact (10, 11, 12), Artificial composite book (4, 6, 7), Atlas (5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), book (4, 6, 7) Broadside (10, 11, 12), Cartographic material (10, 11, 12), Chart (10, 11, 12, 13), Chief source of information (10, 11, 12), Chorus score (10, 11, 12, 13), Close score (10, 11, 12, 13), Collection (3, 5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), composite book (4, 6, 7), composite work (5, 8, 9), Condensed score (11, 12, 13), Continuation (3, 5, 9, 10, 11, 12), Diorama (10, 11, 12, 13), Facsimile reproduction (5, 10, 11, 12), Fascicle (10, 11, 12) , Filmstrip (10, 11, 12), Flash card (10, 11, 12, 13), Globe (10, 11, 12, 13), Graphic (10, 11, 12), Impression (10, 11, 12), Issue (10, 11, 12, 13), Item (10, 11, 12, 13), Kit (10, 11, 12), Macroform (8, 9, 10, 11, 12), Manuscript (8, 9, 10, 11, 12), Map (10, 11, 12, 13), Microfiche (10, 11, 12, 13), Microfilm (10, 11, 12, 13), Microform (10, 11, 12, 13), Micro opaque (8, 9, 10, 11,

12, 13), Model (10, 11, 12), Monograph (5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), Motion picture (10, 11, 12), Multimedia item (10, 11, 12), Object (10, 11, 12, 13), Ordinary composite book (4, 6, 7), Part (10, 11, 12, 13), Part (music) (10, 11, 12), Periodical (2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9), Photocopy (8, 9, 12), Picture (11, 12, 13), Plate (3, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13), Radiograph (10, 11, 12, 13), Realia (10, 11, 12), Reference source (11, 12, 13), Reprint (3, 10, 11, 12), Score (10, 11, 12, 13), Sequel (10, 11, 12), Serial (2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), simple book (4, 6, 7), Sound recording (10, 11, 12), supplement (10, 11, 12), Technical drawing (10, 11, 12, 13), Text (10, 11, 12, 13), Thematic index (8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), Transparency (10, 11, 12), Video recording (10, 11, 12), Volume (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), Work (4, 6, 7, 13).

C4. Discussion

The catalogue related terms occurred once are mostly occurred in RDA 2016 (code 13). Some terms like Cartographic moving image, Cartographic image, Game etc. are totally new term. Some terms like Multipart monograph, Multipart file, Tactile text etc. are popular but not defined earlier. This is a clear indication that RDA has tried to clarify all related concepts to the cataloguer to identify a particular document more accurately.

The terms Append, Frontispiece, Festschrift, are used once in earlier codes. The concept of append as defined in code no.2 i.e., in RDC1904 is now almost obsolete. Frontispieces are now found in few books but today's cataloguers do not feel it necessary to mention it in the description part because it is not considered as a very important item as images of a popular author is now easily available in web environment. Festschrift is a popular term available in language dictionaries of modern times also. So it was defined in one code of 1949 only. Some later codes (CCC 5 1965, etc.) though used the term but not defined it. CCC 5 (code no.7) has coined some unique terms like separate, speaking book, incunabula, sacred work, etc. The concept of speaking book was emerging at 1960s and it may be considered as the predecessor of AV materials as flourished in later times.

For terms occurred twice-**Accompanying materials** occurs in AACR 1988 and it's 2003 update. In RDA 2016 the term was replaced by **accompanied by (item)**. But the term used later though indicates the same entity but not so smooth linguistically. Other two worded terms like Multipart item, Multi part file, etc. used in short intervals of time. This is a clear indication of popularity of those documents at that period of time. The term Adaptation first defined by CCC 5 1965. Later it was defined by RDC2016. Surprisingly the codes in between 1965 and 2016 though used the concept but not defined it at their glossary. But the relevancy of the concept relating to Adaptation is still exist as it was defined by the latest code RDC. CCC defined some unique terms like Ana, Periodical publication, Extract, etc, which were not included in the glossary of other codes.

For multiple time occurred terms—Volume, Serials, Manuscripts, Thematic index, plate, periodicals, etc. occurred in the most of the catalogue codes under study. This is a clear indication of the fact that the concepts related to these terms are still being used in cataloguing. It is also to be noticed that there is no such term which was defined in earlier codes but become obsolete thereafter. Rather the term Reprint first defined in code no.3 in 1908 but later consecutively defined in code no 10,11,12, i.e. AACR 1978 to AACR 2003 update. This is a trend of cataloguing world to define the concepts with the same term but minor changes in their definition after some interval of time. Again, it is noticed that CCCs use and define some unique terms like ordinary composite book, composite book, simple book, work, etc. The term Work first used by Ranganathan and the accepted by the latest code RDA. This indicates again the farsightedness of the great Indian library scientist.

D. Entry Related Terms

D1. Occurred Once

Analysis (2), Audio description (13), Author analytical (7), Consolidated entry (7), Contributor index entry (6), Cross reference (2), Description (13), Explanatory reference (13), General added entry (7), General entry (7), Individual entry (2), Number entry (7), Special cross reference entry (6), Specific added entry (7), Subject

entry (7), Title analytical (7), Topic index entry (4), Unit entry (8), Word entry (7)

D2. Occurred Two Times

Analytical description (8, 13), Analytical reference (1, 2), Author-title added entry (8, 9), Body of entry (8, 9), Class entry (1, 2), Corporate entry (3, 5), Index entry (4, 6), Name-title reference (11, 12), Partial title entry (8, 9), Unit card (5, 9)

D3. Occurred Multiple Times

Added entry (2, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12), Analytical entry (3, 5, 9, 10, 11, 12), Author entry (2, 3, 5), Book index entry (4, 6, 7), Class index entry (4, 6, 7), Cross reference entry (4, 6, 7), Cross reference index entry (4, 6, 7), Entry (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12), Main entry (2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12), Name-title added entry (10, 11, 12), Reference (1, 3, 5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), Series entry (2, 3, 5), Specific entry (1, 2, 7).

D4. Discussion

Two newly coined terms have been found in RDA, those are Explanatory reference and Audio description. The former term denotes no new concept but the concept of traditional Cross reference entry. Here the term is used for another term. The term Audio description denotes the narrative text of a document read loudly by someone to inform about a document as like “audible” but not “visible”. This is a new concept in entry concepts. The terms Cross reference and Individual entry were used at very early stages of catalogue codes (code no.2). Cross reference entry and Cross reference index entry both used in later time but Code no.2 may be considered as the pioneer of this concept. Individual entry further merged with Author entry and subject entry. So the concepts existed but the term changed.

CCCs (4, 6 and 7) used some unique terms like Author analytical (7), Consolidated entry (7), General entry (7), Topic index entry (4), Index entry (4, 6), Class index

entry (4, 6, 7), Cross reference entry and cross reference index entry (4, 6, 7), etc. The last two terms are “trademark” of CCC, as used in all three editions of CCC. But Author analytical only used in the last edition of CCC (CCC 5 1965, Code7). So CCC understood the importance of author analyticals to satisfy the user's approach and defined the term. The other codes used the generic term Analytical entry to denote all the analysis (author, title and subject) under the same umbrella. The term Entry itself defined by all the codes except code 13. It has used the term “description” which is similar to the concept of “entry”.

E. Edition Related Terms

E1. Occurred Once

Edition: electronic resource (12), Edition: computer files (11), Edition: book, pamphlets, single sheet (12), Title edition (2)

E2. Occurred Two Times

Edition: other materials (11, 12), Edition: unpublished item (11, 12), Facsimile edition (8, 9),

E3. Occurred More Than Two Times

Edition (2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 10).

E4. Discussion

The term “Edition” is a generic term first defined in code no.2. Other codes like AA 1908 (3), CCC 1 1934 (4), etc. also defined the term. Surprisingly AACR 1st ed. (both BT and NAT) did not use the term edition, whereas the term edition is being explored by AACR in 1988 and 2002 into different ways i.e., Edition: book, pamphlets, single sheet (12) and Edition: unpublished item, etc. These various manifestations of the term Edition indicate the meaning of edition in different

contexts with the advancements of publication pattern. The latest code RDC 2016(release) does not defined the term but they included “edition statement” in their terminology. So, the term Edition is still relevant and used in the same consequences as earlier codes.

F. Heading related Terms

F1. Occurred Once

Descriptive element (7), Entry element (7), Subject heading (2)

F2. Occurred More Than Once

Access point (10, 11, 12, 13), Entry word (3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12), Heading (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12), Main heading (8, 9, 10, 11, 12).

F3. Discussion

The term Heading itself is the most occurred term here. It was defined from the beginning of the catalogue codes under the study up to the AACR 2002 (2003 update). Later the term “access point” was coined in AACR2, 1978 (code no.10) to amplify the term heading. Access point is the position where Heading occurs. Thus these two terms correlated to each other in later times. CCC 5 1965 (7) defined the two terms Entry element and Descriptive element which are part of “heading”. Ranganathan in his CCC codes (4,6,7) defined heading as a position and Entry element and Descriptive element as the contents of the Heading. So the terms related to “Heading” though occurs in different codes but their contexts changed.

G. Preliminary Pages Related Terms

Here preliminary does not literally mean the position of the pages but the pages providing the preliminary information about a document.

G1. Occurred Once

Series title page (13)

G2. Occurred Two Times

No term found

G3. Occurred More Than Two Times

Colophon (2, 4, 6, 10, 11, 12), Explicit (10, 11, 12)*, Preliminaries (10, 11, 12), Recto (2, 10, 11, 12), Title page (3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), Verso (2, 10, 11, 12).

G4. Discussion

*Explicit and Colophon though are not preliminary pages but the statements available generally at the end of a document, especially manuscripts and early printed books. They are considered as pages as sometimes the pages containing these two named as per them. This term has been used and defined from the earlier stages of the catalogue codes both in dictionary catalogue codes and in classified catalogue codes CCC 5 (code no 7) does not defined the term though the later codes (10, 11, 12) used the term. Probably CCC5 remained the term unchanged and notionally maintained in it as a tradition of CCC 1 and 3 (code 4, 6 respectively).

The term Title page is being defined as a cataloguing terminology since AA 1908 (code no. 3) and it is still being used at the latest code RDA 2016 (code 13). So this term remain unchanged and still being alive.

Recto and verso first used by RDC 1904 (code2). The terms again reappeared in AACR1978 and continued till AACR2003 update. Actually, these terms are very popular terms and may be found in Standard English dictionaries. In cataloging these two terms are also mentioned to denote the front and back sides of a title page and as their traditional meaning does not change so the middle-timed codes may not feel it

necessary to define it again.

The term Preliminaries is defined in AACRs (codes 10-12). The term has been defined as an umbrella term for all the preliminary pages including, title page and its overflow. Earlier catalogue codes defined the preliminary pages in specific manner.

H. Section of Entry Related Term

H1. Occurred Once

Extent of item (12), Hanging indentation (2), Locus (7), parallel title proper (13), Terms of availability (13)

H2. Occurred Twice

Collation (2, 3), Edition statement (7, 13)

H3. Multiple Occurrence

General material designation (10, 11, 12), Imprint (1, 2, 3, 7), Other title information (10, 11, 12, 13), Specific material designation (10, 11, 12), Statement of responsibility (10, 11, 12, 13), Tracing (5, 9, 10, 11, 12), Tracing section (7)

H4. Discussion

Some terms are occurred only once. The terms Locus occurred only in CCC5(7). The terms have its origin in Mathematics and Ranganathan as a mathematician borrowed this term from mathematics and used analogically as its use in Mathematics, i.e. location of something. The term Hanging indentation is found to be defined in one code only (2) in 1904. Surprisingly no other code defined the term again though the concept is still practiced in cataloguing unofficially. No modern code even mentioned the provision of hanging indentation and it is officially obsolete now.

“Terms of availability” is being used as a subsection of AACR2R (1988) and its further updates (2003 and 2005) but is not defined in these codes. It is only defined in RDA(2016) release. As the term is self explanatory to some extent so AACRs may not feel to define term but it is a big disappointment from the cataloguers using AACRs who have to only guess the meaning of the term from examples.

The terms Collation and Imprint used in some earlier codes and replaced by the Physical description and Publication, distribution, etc. area in later AACR codes. General material designation and Specific material designation are used only in AACR codes (10, 11, 12). These types of terms are not found in other codes. The first terms used to denote the form of documents, that indicates the tendency of AACR to mention the form of documents at the time of searching which was a demand of the time in late 80's. Implementation of ISBD is also one of the factors of including Specific material designation at the terminology of AACR2R and its later updates.

The term Tracing occurred first in the terminology of ALA 1949 (5) and also defined in some other codes published later times. CCC does not even mentioned the term Tracing in its first edition (1934) but used the term Tracing section in edition five (1965). Surprisingly in this edition Tracing is not defined but only described by its location and contents which is easy to understand. RDA does not use the term naturally because in modern cataloguing concept of electronic era Tracing is irrelevant.

I. Title Related Term

I 1. Occurred Once

Abbreviated title (13), Catchword title (5), Conventional title (8), Devised title (13), Fanciful title (7), Partial title (5), Proper name title (7), Tell-Tale title (7), Uniformised title (7), Variant title (13).

I2. Occurred Twice

No term found

I3. Occurred More Than Three

Alternative title (3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), Binder's title (2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12), Caption title (3, 10, 11, 12, 13), Collective title (10, 11, 12, 13), Cover title (3, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12), Half title (3, 4, 6, 7, 10, 11, 12), Key title (10, 11, 12, 13), Parallel title (10, 11, 12), Running title (3, 7, 10, 11, 12, 13), Short title (4, 6, 7), Spine title (10, 11, 12), Subtitle (3, 5, 7, 8, 13), Supplied title (10, 11, 12), Title (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13), Title proper (10, 11, 12, 13), Uniform title (5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12).

I4. Discussion

Some new terms coined by RDA like Abbreviated title, Variant title, etc. These terms recognizes the facts that title of a document may abbreviated and also may be manifested in different forms other than the Title proper. Some codes (4, 6, 7) have used the term short title which is synonymous to the Abbreviated title. Devised tile as occurs in the terminology of RDA refers to the fact that sometimes cataloguers may need to make a title by themselves, very much relevant for some documents. CCC 5 (7) used some unique terms like Fanciful title, Tell-Tale tile, Uniformised title, etc. The first two indicate the type of titles by their clarity of denoting the subjects of a document. The third one is related to the concept of most accepted title of an item named differently in its different manifestations. This term Uniformised title may be considered as the varied form of Uniform title as used in ALA 1949 (code no.5).

Among the multiple occurred terms Alternative title, Binder's title, Cover tile, Caption title, Subtitle, Title, etc. are being used in most of the catalogue codes. This is a proof of the relevancy of the terms and related concepts from the beginning of modern cataloguing to the recent past. The term Short title as used by CCC may be considered as the predecessor of Abbreviated title as used in RDA (13). So CCC may be

considered as a pioneer of popularizing the concept. Some terms like Parallel title, Supplied title, Collective title, Key title, etc are defined in recent past (i.e., in codes 10, 11, 12, 13) is an indication of related concepts in this epoch of time. The term Title itself occurs in all the codes and remain unchanged, thus proving its inevitability in cataloguing world.

So only two terms are found to occur in all the 13 codes under the study. These are Title and Volume. There are 190 terms having occurrence percentage below 20%, occurring once or twice. This is a clear indication that most of the terms in library catalogue codes are newly coined terms by the code makers. In RDA 2016, 66 terms (like variant title, etc.) coined newly whereas in CCC 5 1965, 46 newly coined terms found (like Speaking book, etc.). It is also to be noticed that some terms like commentator etc though used in various earlier catalogue code and their rules but they are defined in RDA2016 for the first time. The probable cause behind this is that RDA tried to clear each concept without any confusion to help the cataloguer assigning the designation of an entity in web cataloguing environment. CCC 5 1965 is a classified catalogue code with additional rules due to the fact that these terms are not relevant in modern cataloguing, e.g., Main entry.

Appendix – 5

Negative Characteristics found in Terms and Definitions

Among 27 terms and 164 definitions in 9 catalogue codes as discussed in Chapter 6 violation of the evaluation criteria have been found as follows:

Term	Number of occurrences (Maximum 9)	T1=0	T2=0	T3=0 or 0.5	T4=0 or 0.5	T6=0 or 0.5
Added Entry	6	NA	5, 7, 12	NA	NA	NA
Added Title Page	4	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Alternative Title	6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Atlas	4	NA	NA	All	NA	All
Author	6	NA	1,2	NA	NA	NA
Binder's Title	6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Catalogue	7	3	NA	NA	NA	NA
Collection	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Compiler	7	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Corporate Body	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Edition	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Editor	6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Entry	8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Entry Word	5	NA	5	NA	NA	NA
Half Title	4	NA	3	NA	NA	NA
Heading	8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

Joint Author	6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Main Entry	7	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Monograph	4	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Periodical	6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Reference	7	NA	NA	All	NA	NA
Serial	8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Series	7	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Title	9	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Title Page	6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Translator	4	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Volume	9	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Total	165					

*Numbers in column 3 to 7 indicates the code numbers

Among 27 terms under study, only homonym found for the term Catalogue in code no.3.Synonyms found for three terms-Added entry for three times, Author for two times and half title for once.

Term	Number of definitions	D1=0	D2=0	D3=0 or 0.5	D4=0 or 0.5
Added Entry	6	7		7,3,5	
Added Title Page	4				
Alternative Title	6				
Atlas	4				
Author	6		1,2,3,5		
Binder's Title	6				
Catalogue	7		12		
Collection	5		8,12		
Compiler	7	13	5,8,12		
Corporate Body	5		7,13		7,13
Edition	5		2,3,7		
Editor	6	5,12,13	4		
Entry	8		5,8		
Entry Word	5				

Half Title	4				
**Heading	7	7	7	NA	7
Joint Author	6				
Main Entry	7		5		
Monograph	4			8	
Periodical	6		4	5	
Reference	7				
Serial	8		4		
Series	7	4	13,12,8,7,5, 4	7	
Title	9	7	1,2,3,5,7,8		
Title Page	6				
Translator	4				
Volume	9	5	1,2,3,4,7,8, 12		1,2

*Numbers in column 3 to 6 indicates the code numbers

Five definitions are found having circularity at their statements either partly or totally. So almost all the definitions are concise, positive and non-circular. But preciseness hampered to some extent to the definitions in some cases especially in codes 7 and 8. In most of the cases the definition of the term Volume found not to be precise, even the CCCs (code 4 and 7) are not free from this limitations. **It is to be noted that for first two criteria D1 and D2 only Zero values have been taken in negative sense because Conciseness and preciseness are desirable though may be partly fulfilled, on the other hand for Positiveness and non-circularity binary options, i.e., either yes or no only exists, so partly positive or no-circularity (score 0.5) are considered as negative in the sense.**

Appendix – 6

Graphical Presentation of Terms in Different Categories

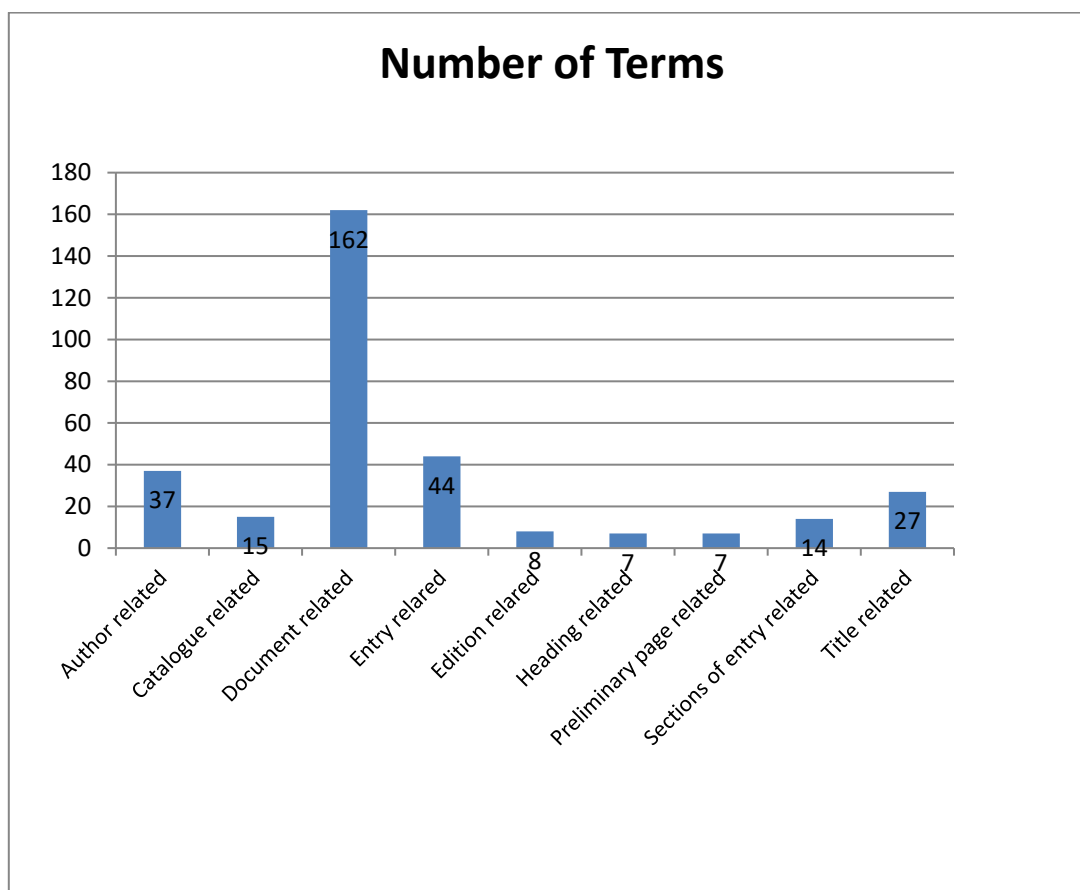


Figure A: Distribution of Terms under the Study (Category-wise)

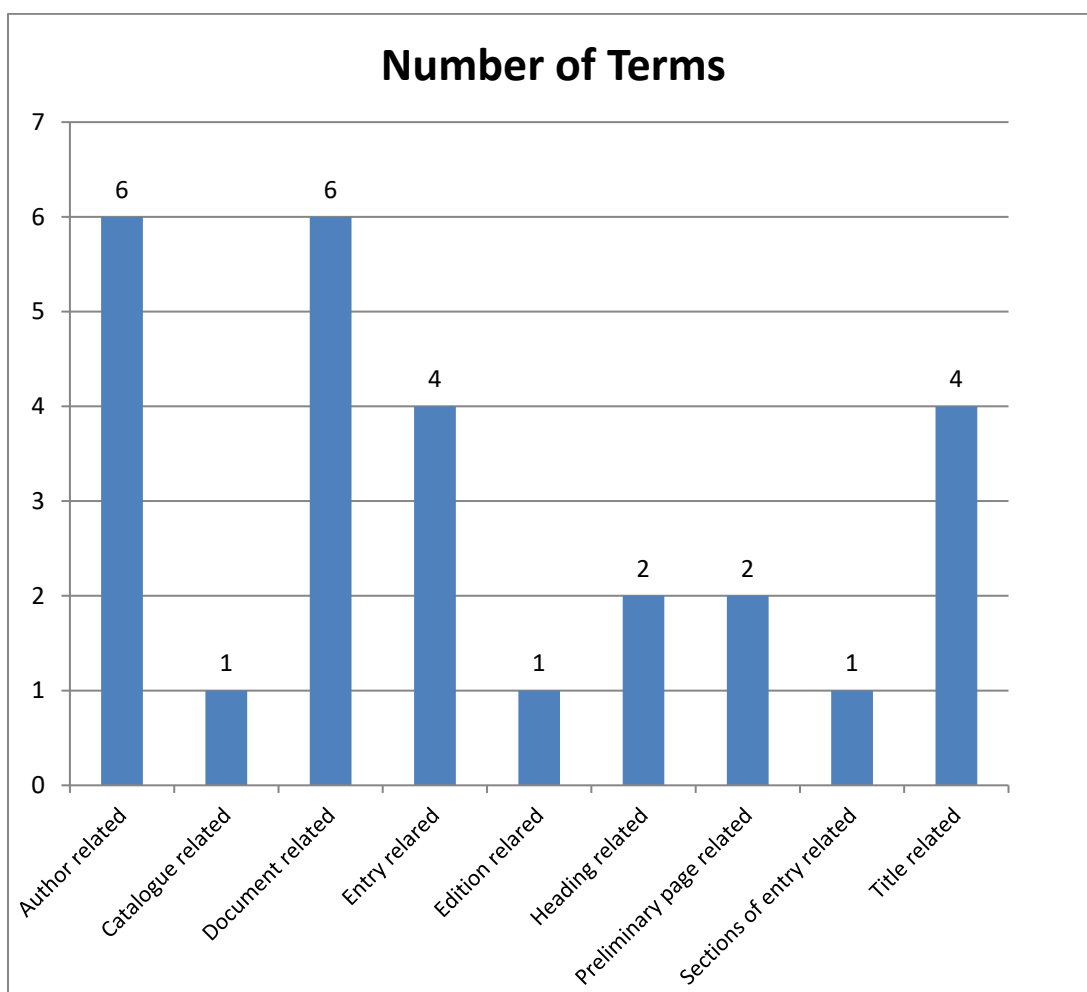


Figure B: Inclusion of terms in Core group - Category wise

Appendix-7

Term-wise Highest Percentage Score for Designations and Definitions

Sl. No.	Term	Highest percentage score for term	Highest percentage score for definition
1	Added Entry	85	100
2	Added Title Page	85	100
3	Alternative Title	100	100
4	Atlas	58	100
5	Author	100	100
6	Binder's Title	100	100
7	Catalogue	91	100
8	Collection	100	100
9	Compiler	100	100
10	Corporate Body	91	100
11	Edition	100	100
12	Editor	100	87.5
13	Entry Word	100	100
14	Entry	83	100
15	Half Title	85.7	100
16	Heading	100	100
17	Joint Author	100	100
18	Main Entry	100	100
19	Monograph	100	100
20	Periodical	100	100
21	Reference	75	100
22	Serial	100	100

23	Series	83.3	87.5
24	Title Page	100	100
25	Title	100	100
26	Translator	100	100
27	Volume	83.3	87.5